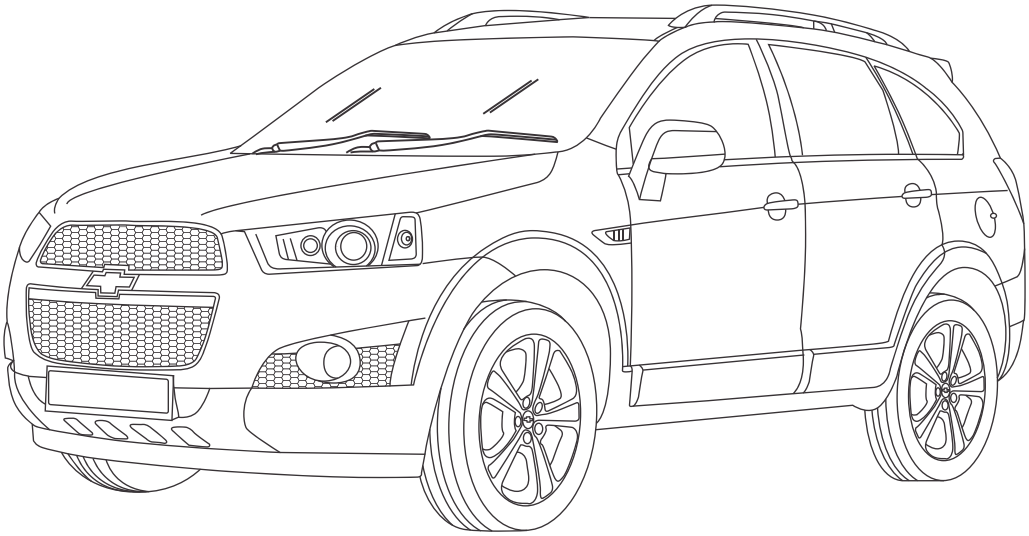
CHEVROLET

CAPTIVA



Owner's Manual

Operation, Safety and Maintenance

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VEHICLE RECORD SHEET

Model Name		Delivery Date		Tyre Make	
V.I.N.				Tyre Location	Batch Code
Engine No.		Key No.		Fr RH	
Registration No.		Regn. Date		Fr LH	
Transmission No.		Color, Code No.		Rr RH	
Battery Make		Battery Batchcode/Sl.No.		Rr LH	
Owner's Name				Spare	
Address					
City				Pin Code	
Selling Dealer's Name					
Address					
	Pin Code			Selling Dealers Stamp	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dear Customer,

Welcome to the Chevrolet family. We wish to thank you for choosing Chevrolet car.

It is our constant endeavor to provide you with products that offer excellent performance through out their ownership period. Which is why, in addition to offering great cars, we have also set up an extensive, and very well equipped network of retailers and authorized service centres across the country.

Naturally, these Chevrolet retailers knows everything there is to know about your car, and provides you with the best service possible. In fact, every retailer is equipped with the most advanced technology, technicians specially trained by us, and genuine spares. Needless to say, they are also committed to ensure your complete satisfaction.

So, please contact a Chevrolet retailer for any servicing need and make sure that only genuine spares are used for your car.

This manual will familiarize you with the operation and maintenance of your new vehicle. It will also provide you with important safety information. Please do read it carefully and follow the recommendations. In fact, the manual is like a permanent part of your car. And it would go a long way in ensuring a safe and trouble-free operation for your car.

Should you have any query please feel free to call our 24 hr. Helpline at 30308080 (Prefix local STD code when dialing from mobile phone) or email us at : gmi.cac@gm.com.

Happy Motoring

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONTENTS

Introduction
Keys, Doors and Windows 1-1
Keys and Locks 1-1
Doors 1-7
Vehicle Security 1-9
Exterior Mirrors 1-12
Interior Mirrors 1-15
Windows 1-15
Roof 1-18
Seats and Restraints 2-1
Head Restraints 2-2
Front Seats 2-4
Rear Seats 2-9
Safety Belts 2-14
Airbag System 2-22
Child Restraints 2-30
Storage 3-1
Storage Compartments 3-1
Roof Paneling 3-4
Additional Storage Features ... 3-5
Roof Rack System 3-6
Information On Loading the Vehicle 3-7
Instruments and Controls 4-1
Instrument Panel Overview 4-2
Controls 4-4
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 4-12
Information Displays 4-33
Trip Computer 4-34
Lighting..... 5-1
Exterior Lighting 5-1
Interior Lighting 5-6
Lighting Features 5-7
Infotainment System 6-1
Introduction 6-1
Radio 6-4
Audio Players 6-6
Phone 6-12
Climate Controls 7-1
Climate Control Systems 7-1
Air Vents 7-9
Maintenance 7-11
Driving and Operating 8-1
Driving Information 8-2
Starting and Operating 8-11
Engine Exhaust 8-18
Automatic Transmission 8-20
Manual Transmission 8-25
Drive Systems 8-26
Brakes 8-27
Ride Control Systems 8-32
Cruise Control 8-34
Object Detection Systems 8-37
Fuel 8-38
Vehicle Care 9-1
General Information 9-2
Vehicle Checks 9-3
Electrical System 9-36
Wheels and Tires 9-43
Jump Starting 9-61
Towing 9-65
Appearance Care 9-68
Service and Maintenance 10-1
General Information..... 10-1
Scheduled Maintenance 10-2
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 10-5
Technical Data.....11-1
Vehicle Identification 11-1
Vehicle Specifications 11-3
Service and Warranty 12-1
Standard Limited Warranty Coverage 12-2
Pre-delivery Inspection and Vehicle Delivery 12-9

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Owner's Statement Of Acceptance 12-11
Chevrolet Service 12-13
Maintenance Record Sheet ... 12-19
Battery 12-21
Separate Corrosion Protection Service 12-22
Body Inspection Record 12-23
Emission Warranty 12-25

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INTRODUCTION

Introduction i
Using this Manual..... i
Danger, Warnings and Cautions ii
Symbols iii

INTRODUCTION

Your Chevrolet Captiva ("vehicle") is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness, and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner’s Manual.

When this Owner's Manual refers to a CHEVROLET retailer visit, we recommend your CHEVROLET Service Partner.

All CHEVROLET Service Partners provide first-class service at reasonable prices. Experienced mechanics trained by CHEVROLET work according to specific CHEVROLET instructions.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

USING THIS MANUAL

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment, or accessories.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The vehicle display screens may not support your specific language.
- The Owner's Manual uses the factory engine designations. The corresponding sales designations can be found in the chapter "Technical Data".

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Directional data, e.g. left or right to the direction of travel.
- Depending on the model variant, country variant, integrated special equipment and accessories, the scope of equipment of your vehicle can differ form the descriptions in this Owner's Manual.

DANGER, WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

⚠ Danger

Text marked ⚠**Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ Warning

Text marked ⚠**Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

⊘: This is a safety symbol which means 'Do not', 'Do not do this', or 'Do not let this happen'.

* or (Option) : The asterisk in this manual signify an item of equipment that is not included on all vehicles. Such items include engine options, model variations specific to one country, and optional equipment.

All information, illustrations, and specifications in this manual are based on the latest product information available at the time of publication.

General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. reserve the right to change specifications or designs at any time without notice and without incurring obligation.

This vehicle may not comply with the standards or regulations of other countries. Before attempting to register this vehicle in any other country, check all applicable regulations and make any necessary modifications.

This manual describes the options and trims available at the time of publication. Some of the items covered may not apply to your vehicle. Contact your CHEVROLET retailer for information on option and trim availability.

Non-General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. genuine parts and accessories have not been examined or approved by General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. We can certify neither the suitability nor the safety of non-GMI genuine parts and accessories and are not liable for damage caused by their use.

Warning : Tampering of wiring harness or fitment of non genuine accessories in your vehicle may lead to short circuit resulting in fire.

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving **Chevrolet**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SYMBOLS

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see your Owner's Manual for additional instructions or information.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see a Service Manual for additional instructions or information.

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean.

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Brake System Warning Light

: Charging System

: Cruise Control

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Fuel Gauge

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: LATCH System Child Restraints*

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Power

: Safety Belt Reminder

: Traction Control

: Windshield Washer Fluid*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

KEYS, DOORS AND WINDOWS

Keys and Locks
Keys 1-1
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 1-2
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 1-3
Door Locks 1-4
Manual Door Locks..... 1-5
Power Door Locks 1-6
Safety Lock 1-6
Doors
Tailgate 1-7
Vehicle Security
Anti-theft Alarm System 1-9
Immobilizer Operation 1-11
Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors 1-12
Power Mirrors 1-13
Folding Mirrors..... 1-13
Heated Mirrors 1-14
Interior Mirrors
Manual Rearview Mirror 1-15
Windows
Power Windows 1-15
Heated Rear Window/ Windshield Wiper De-Icer.....1-17
Sun Visors 1-18
Roof
Sunroof 1-18
Sunblind 1-19

KEYS AND LOCKS

KEYS

⚠ Warning

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons. Children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move.

The windows will function with the keys in the ignition and children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

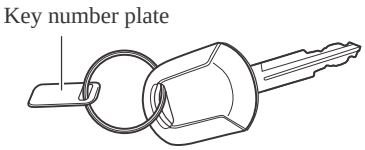
Two keys are provided with your new Chevrolet vehicle.

Keep one of the two keys as a spare. The key number is stamped on the key number plate. For vehicle security, keep the key number plate in a safe place, not in the vehicle. You should also record the key number in a safe place, not in the vehicle.

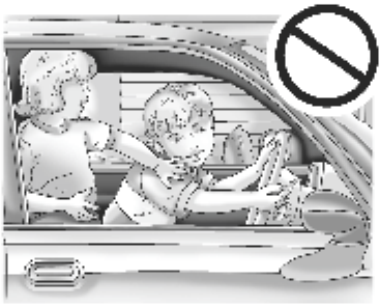
This deters unauthorized persons from obtaining a duplicate key.

⚠ Warning

Do not leave the key in the vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle.
- Take the key with you.



Note
In case of loss, replacement keys are available with your CHEVROLET retailer.
To protect your car from theft, an electronic immobilization system has been installed in your vehicle. Only keys with the correct electronic code can be used to start the car. Even if a key has the same profile it will not start the engine if the electronic code is incorrect.



A key that is part of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter can be used for the ignition and all locks.

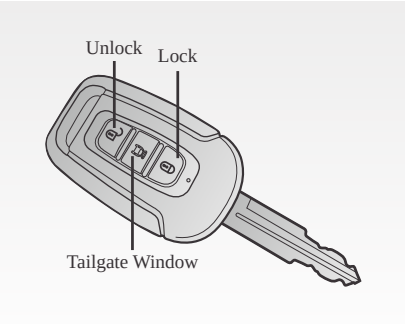
REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (RKE) SYSTEM

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment. If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your CHEVROLET retailer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (RKE) SYSTEM OPERATION



The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter functions will work up to 6 m (20 ft) away from the vehicle. There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter. See Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 1-2.

The LED on the transmitter flashes to show that it is operational.

(Lock): Press to lock all doors.

The hazard warning lamps will flash once and the anti-theft alarm system will be activated. See Anti-theft Alarm System on page 1-9.

(Unlock): Press to unlock all doors.

The hazard warning lamps will flash twice and the anti-theft alarm system will be deactivated. See Anti-theft Alarm System on page 1-9.

(Tailgate Window): Press for about 1 second to release the Tailgate Window.

Note

LOCK, UNLOCK and TAILGATE WINDOW buttons are not operated while the key is in the ignition switch.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to this vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your CHEVROLET retailer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to this vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be reprogrammed. Any lost or stolen transmitters will no longer work once the new transmitter is programmed.

Battery Replacement

Warning

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in accordance with environmental protection regulations to help protect the environment and your health.

Caution

When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.

If the LED fails to illuminate or the range is noticeably diminished, it is an indication that a new battery is needed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To replace the battery:

Note

Use CR1620 (or equivalent) replacement battery.

1. Remove the screw from the back of the cover.
2. Open the transmitter cover.
3. Pull the transmitter unit out of the cover and open the cover of the transmitter unit.
4. Remove the used battery. Avoid touching the circuit board to other components.
5. Install the new battery. Be sure the positive side (+) faces down towards the base.
6. Close the cover of the transmitter unit and put the unit in the cover of the transmitter.
7. Assemble the transmitter cover.
8. Check the operation of the transmitter with your vehicle.

DOOR LOCKS

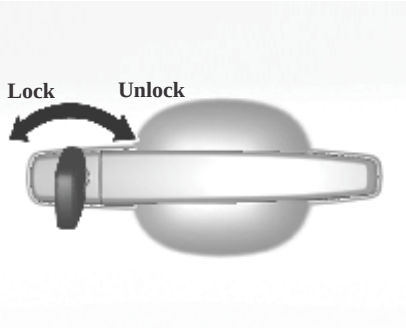
⚠ Warning

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear safety belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop the vehicle. Locking the doors can help prevent this from happening.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

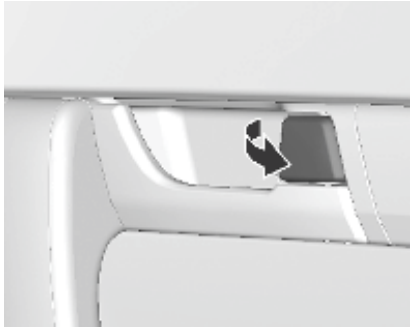
MANUAL DOOR LOCKS



To lock the doors from outside using the key, insert the key and turn it counter-clockwise.

To unlock, turn the key clockwise.

Caution
Lock all doors and take the key with you, while leaving the vehicle unattended. Unlocked vehicle invite theft.



To lock any door from the inside, pull the door lock button.

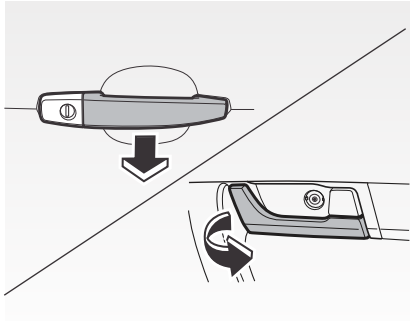
To unlock any door from the inside, push the door lock button.

Note

The driver's door lock button cannot be pushed when the door is open. This prevents locking the driver's door when you leave the key inside your car by mistake.

To open a door from the inside or outside, pull the door handle.

The driver's door and the front passenger's door can be opened by pulling the door handle from the inside even if the doors are locked with the door lock button.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

POWER DOOR LOCKS

Central Locking System
You can activate the central door locking system from the driver's door. This system allows you to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate from the driver's door, using either the key or keyless remote (from outside) or the door lock switch (from inside).

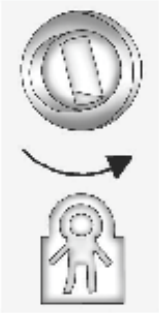
Central Locking Button

You can also lock or unlock the doors with the door lock switches on the driver's door trim pad.

Press the left part of the switch to lock the doors.
To unlock the doors, press the right part of the switch.
To open a door from the inside or outside, pull the door handle.

Note
Grease should be applied to the door check latch and hinge at regular intervals or if a noise can be heard when opening, closing the door or during driving.

SAFETY LOCK



You can use a key or suitable screw-driver.

To operate the child security door lock, turn the child locks into horizontal position.

To open a rear door when the child security door lock is activated, open the door from the outside.

To cancel the child security door lock, turn the child locks into vertical position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Use the child security door locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

Caution

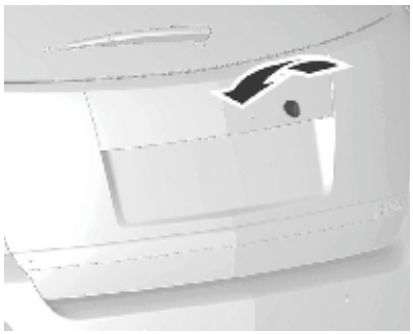
Do not pull the inside door handle while the child security door lock is set to LOCK position. It can damage the inside door handle.

DOORS

TAILGATE

⚠ Warning

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the tailgate or trunk/hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the trunk/hatch or tailgate. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.
See Engine Exhaust on page 8-18.



To open the tailgate, insert the key into the key slot and turn it counterclock wise. Pull up the handle above the number plate and lift the tailgate.

To close tailgate, push it down so it latches securely.

The tailgate can be locked or unlocked by central door locking system. See Central Locking System on page 1-6.

Make sure your hands and any other body parts, as well as those of other persons, are completely away from the tailgate closure area.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution
When opening or closing the tailgate, be sure to check it is free from obstructions.

Tailgate Window Release Button

You can open the tailgate window by pressing the tailgate window release button located in the driver's door trim.

The tailgate window can be also opened by pressing the tailgate window button on the remote key.

See Remote Keyless Entry Operation on page 1-3.

After opening, hold the handle on the tailgate window and lift it.

To close tailgate window, push it down so it latches securely. It locks automatically.

Caution
Do not operate the tailgate window release button while the vehicle is moving. Do not operate the vehicle with the tailgate window open.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tailgate Operation With Loss of Power

To open the tailgate if the vehicle's battery is disconnected or the voltage is low, access the release lever. Remove the interior trim cover on the inside of the tailgate. Use a tool to push the lever on the latch until the tailgate releases.

VEHICLE SECURITY

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Security Indicator

Indicates the anti-theft system is working.

The security indicator goes out when doors are unlocked using the keyless entry transmitter or key.

The security indicator comes on when you lock the doors using the keyless entry transmitter or key.

Door Lock and Anti-Theft Mode Activation

1. Close all windows.
2. Turn the ignition key to LOCK and remove the key.
3. Have all passengers exit the vehicle.
4. Close all doors, hood and tailgate.
5. Press and release LOCK button on the transmitter.

   The LED on the transmitter will flash.

   - All doors lock.
   - Hazard warning lamps flash once.
   - Anti-theft mode is activated after about 30 seconds.

     If the key is inserted into the ignition key hole, the transmitter will not operate the anti-theft system.

Note

The system can be activated even if the windows are open. Close all the windows and doors before leaving the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

If pressing the LOCK button on the transmitter when all doors, hood and tailgate are not completely closed, the anti-theft system is in the open state at this point and the security indicator will flash quickly. The anti-theft system transits to the locked state when all doors, hood and tailgate are completely closed. The security indicator will illuminate steady when in the locked state. If the LOCK button is pressed after all doors, hood and tailgate have been closed, the open state will be bypassed and the system will transit directly to the locked state with the security indicator on steady.

Note

The anti-theft system is activated if the doors are locked manually as well as the remote keyless entry transmitter is used.

1. Confirm that the security indicator flashes slowly after illuminating for approximately 30 seconds from the time that the system has entered the locked state. If LOCK button on the transmitter is pressed a second time, the anti-theft system will activate immediately, bypassing the 30 seconds delay. The security indicator is located in the right area of the clock.

⚠ Warning

Do not lock the vehicle if anyone is to be left inside the vehicle.

Never leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle can increase more rapidly and reach much higher levels than the temperature outside.

This can result in serious injury or death.

Horn sound

The system provides visual (exterior lamps blink) sign and audible (horns pulse) sound for about 30 seconds when any of the doors, tailgate or the hood are opened without using the key or pressing the unlock button on the transmitter.

To stop the horn sound:

- Press the LOCK or UNLOCK button on the transmitter.
- Unlock the driver's door with a key.

  (In some countries, doing so may not stop the horn sound. Press the LOCK or UNLOCK button to stop the sound). If the unauthorised entry still exists, the alarm sound will be activated with a periodic repeat.

If the system does not operate as described above, have it checked by your CHEVROLET retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Tap the key hole or heat the key if the door does not open with freezing key hole in cold weather.

⚠ Warning

Do not use the transmitter to lock the vehicle if anyone is to be left inside.

Never leave children or pets alone in your vehicle.

The temperature inside the vehicle can increase more rapidly and reach much higher levels than the temperature outside.

This can result in serious injury or death.

Door Unlock and Anti-Theft Mode Deactivation

1. Unlock the driver's door with a key. Or,
2. Press and release UNLOCK button on the transmitter.
   - The LED on the transmitter will flash.
   - All the doors unlock.
   - Hazard warning lamps flash twice.
   - Anti-theft mode is deactivated.

In some countries, unlocking the driver door with a key may sound alarm. Make sure to press the UNLOCK button on the transmitter to unlock doors.

Auto Door Relock

If the door is not opened and the engine is not started within 30 seconds after disarming the system using the transmitter, all the doors are automatically locked and the anti-theft mode is reactivated.

IMMOBILIZER OPERATION

The immobilizer system provides an additional theft deterrent to your vehicle in which it is installed and prevents it from being started by unauthorised persons. The valid key for a vehicle equipped with immobilizer system is an ignition key with integrated transponder, which is electronically coded. The transponder is placed invisibly in the ignition key.

Only valid ignition keys can be used to start the engine.

Invalid keys may only open the doors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The engine is automatically immobilized after the key is turned to LOCK and has been removed from the ignition switch.

The immobilizer light, located in the instrument panel cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system. See Immobilizer Light on page 4-29.

When trying to start the vehicle, the immobilizer light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the engine does not start and the immobilizer light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be undamaged, try another ignition key.

If the engine still does not start and the light continues to stay on with the other key, the vehicle needs service. If the vehicle does start, the first key may be damaged. See your CHEVROLET retailer who can service the theft-deterrent system and have a new key made.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

CONVEX MIRRORS

⚠ Warning

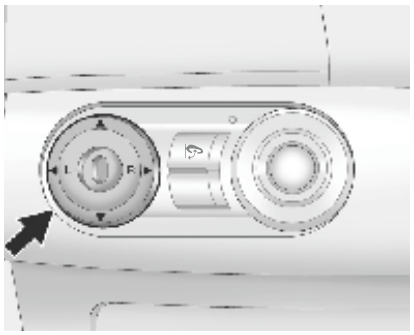
A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

Both passenger and driver outside mirrors are convex shaped.

The convex exterior mirror reduces blind spots. The shape of the mirror makes object appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

POWER MIRRORS



Controls for the outside power mirrors are on the driver side instrument panel.

To adjust:

1. Turn the knob to the L (Left) or R (Right) to choose a mirror.

2. Adjust the selected mirror up, down, left or right using the corresponding edges of the mirror adjusting pad, so that the side and the area behind the vehicle can be seen.

3. Return the control to the center position so the mirror cannot be moved.

The ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC / ACCESSORY. See Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 8-15 for more information.

The outside mirrors will work up to 10 minutes after the vehicle has been turned off. If a door is opened while the key is in the LOCK position or if taken out of the ignition, the mirror will not work.

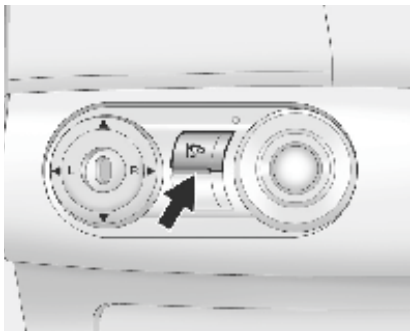
FOLDING MIRRORS

Manual Folding

Manually fold the outside mirrors in, to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, while sitting in the vehicle, pull the mirrors toward the vehicle. Push out, to return the mirrors to their original position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Folding



For vehicles with power folding mirrors, press the folding mirror button to fold the outside mirrors flat against the side of the vehicle.

The ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. See Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 8-15 for more information.

Power to the folding outside mirrors will work up to 10 minutes after the vehicle has been turned off. Power to the folding outside mirrors will turn off if a door is opened while the key is in the LOCK position or taken out of the ignition.

⚠ Warning

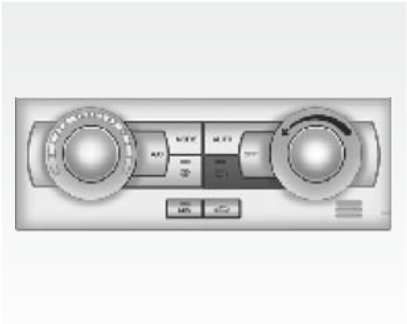
Always keep your mirrors properly adjusted, and use them while driving to increase your visibility of objects and other vehicles around you. Do not drive while either outside rearview mirror is folded back.

Caution

Do not operate mirror continuous while the engine is not running.

This will discharge the battery.

HEATED MIRRORS



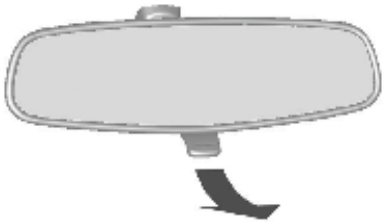
For vehicles with outside heated mirrors:

(Rear Window Defogger): Press to heat the outside rearview mirrors. Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a few minutes or by pressing the button again. See Rear Window Defogger under Automatic Climate Control on page 7-7 for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INTERIOR MIRRORS

MANUAL REARVIEW MIRROR



To adjust the inside rearview mirror, hold the rearview mirror in the center and move it to view the area behind the vehicle.

Push the lever forward for daytime use and pull it for nighttime use to avoid glare from the headlamps from behind.

⚠ Warning

Your view through the mirror may lose some clarity when it is adjusted for night vision.

Take special care with using your inside rearview mirror when it is adjusted for night vision.

Failure to ensure a clear rear view while driving may result in a collision causing damage to your vehicle or other property, and/or personal injury.

WINDOWS

POWER WINDOWS

⚠ Warning

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous.

They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when a window is partially open. To reduce the sound, open another window or the sunroof (if equipped).

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seat, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them.

Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

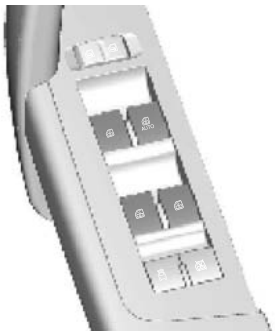
⚠ Warning

Body parts outside vehicle can be struck by passing objects. Keep all parts of body inside vehicle.

Children can operate and become entrapped in power windows.

Do not leave your keys or unattended children in your car.

Serious injury or death can occur from misuse of power windows.



Power windows can be operated with ignition ON.

Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Operation

You may operate the power windows when the ignition switch is ON by using the power window switches on each door panel.

To open the window, press down on the switch. To close the window, lift up on the switch. Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Express-Down (Auto Down) Window

The driver's window switch has an express-down feature that lowers the window without holding the switch.

To lower the window, press down firmly, then release the switch. The window will open automatically until it is fully open. To stop the window while it is opening, pull the switch again.

To raise the window, pull up and hold the switch. To stop the window , release the switch.

Child Safety System for Rear Windows

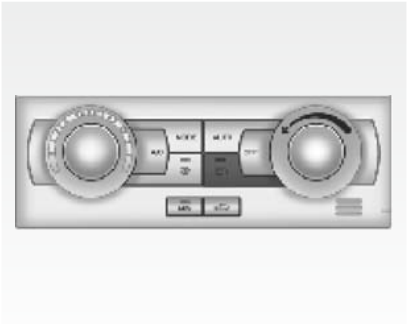
Press switch to deactivate rear power windows.

To activate press again.

Warning

Do not operate the power window switch with no purpose.

HEATED REAR WINDOW / WINDSHIELD WIPER DE-ICER



Operated by pressing the button.

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a few minutes or by pressing the button again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

Do not use sharp instruments or abrasive window cleaners on your windshield or rear window.

Do not scratch or damage the defroster wires when you clean or work around the windshield or rear window.

SUN VISORS

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.

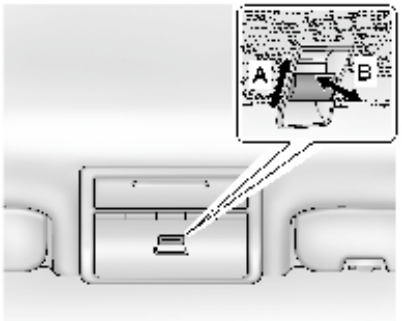
If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.

⚠ Warning

Do not place the sun visor in such a manner that it obscures visibility of the roadway, traffic or other objects.

ROOF

SUNROOF



If equipped, the ignition must be in ON/RUN, or ACC/ACCESSORY.

A. **Open/Close**: Slide and release the switch rearward to express open the sunroof. Slide the switch forward or rearward to stop movement.

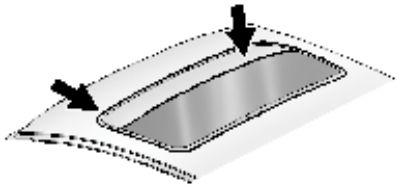
   The sunblind opens automatically with the sunroof or can be manually operated. The sunblind cannot be closed with the sunroof open.

   Slide and hold the switch forward to close the sunroof.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The sunblind must be closed manually.

B. **Vent Open/Close:** Press and hold the switch to vent the sunroof. Pull and hold the switch to close it. The sunblind must be manually operated when the sunroof is in the vent position.



Note

The sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes or until a door is opened when the ignition key is in the lock position or out of the ignition.

Caution

Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation, noise, or plugging the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the sunroof. There is risk of injury, particularly to children.

Keep a close watch on the movable parts when operating them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

SUNBLIND

The sunblind is operated manually.

Close or open the sunblind by sliding.

When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

⚠ Warning

Body parts outside vehicle can be struck by passing objects. Keep all parts of body inside vehicle.

Serious injury or death can occur from misuse of sunroof.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEATS AND RESTRAINTS

Head Restraints
Head Restraints Position 2-2
Active Head Restraints* 2-3
Front Seats
Seat Position 2-4
Manual Seat Adjustment 2-5
Power Seat Adjustment 2-5
Lumbar Adjustment 2-6
Reclining Seatbacks 2-6
Folding Seatback 2-8
Rear Seats
Second Row Seats 2-9
Third Row Seats 2-13
Safety Belts
Safety Belts 2-14
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 2-15
Lap-Shoulder Belt 2-16
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 2-19
Lap Belt 2-20
Safety System Check 2-20
Safety Belt Care 2-21
Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash 2-21
Airbag System
Airbag System 2-22
Where Are the Airbags? 2-24
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 2-25
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 2-27
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 2-27
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 2-27
Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 2-29
Airbag System Check 2-29
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 2-29
Child Restraints
Older Children 2-30
Infants and Young Children .. 2-32
Child Restraint Systems 2-34
Where to Put the Restraint 2-36
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* .. 2-37
Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the Latch System 2-40
Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash 2-42
Securing Child Restraints 2-42

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HEAD RESTRAINTS

HEAD RESTRAINTS POSITION

Front Seats

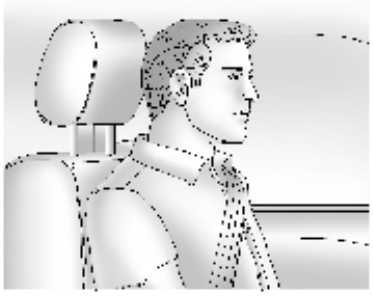
The vehicle's front seats have adjustable headrests in the outboard seating positions.

⚠ Warning

Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.

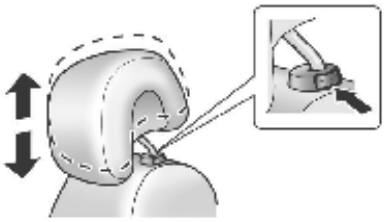
Removed or improperly adjusted head restraints can result in serious head and neck injuries in case of a collision.

Make sure that the head restraint readjusted before driving.



Adjust the headrest so that the top of the headrest is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

Height Adjustment

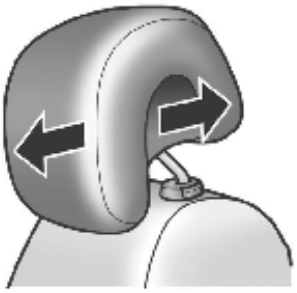


The height of the headrest can be adjusted. Pull the headrest up, to raise it. Try to move the headrest to make sure that it is locked in place.

To lower the headrest, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the headrest down. Try to move the headrest after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

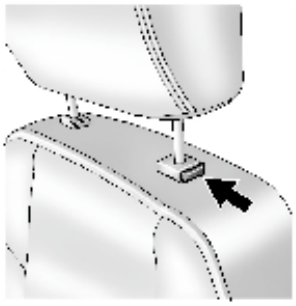
Horizontal Adjustment



On some models, the headrest can be adjusted forward and rearward. To adjust the headrest forward, grasp the headrest at the bottom and pull forward to the desired locked position. To adjust the headrest rearward, grasp the headrest at the bottom and pull forward fully until the mechanism releases and allows the headrest to return to the full rear position.

The front seat outboard headrests are not designed to be removed.

Rear Seats
Head Restraints Height Adjustment



The vehicle's rear seat has adjustable headrests in all three seating positions.

The height of the headrest can be adjusted. Pull the headrest up, to raise it. Try to move the headrest to make sure that it is locked in place.

To lower the headrest, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the headrest down. Try to move the headrest to make sure that it is locked in place. Rear seat headrests can be removed.

ACTIVE HEAD RESTRAINTS*

In the event of a rear-end impact, the active head restraints at front seats automatically tilt forwards. The head is more effectively supported by the head restraint and the risk of injuries caused by hyperextension in the cervical vertebrae area is reduced.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FRONT SEATS

SEAT POSITION

⚠ Warning

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

- Sit with your buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that your legs are slightly angled when tromping the pedals. Slide the passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Sit with your shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest angle so that you can easily reach the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between your shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not tilt the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum angle of approx. 25°.
- Adjust the steering wheel. See Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 4-4.
- Set the seat height enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and on all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between your head and the headlining. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Adjust the head restraints. See Head Restraints Position on page 2-2.
- Adjust the height of the safety belt. See Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster on page 2-18.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MANUAL SEAT ADJUSTMENT
(Passenger's Seat)

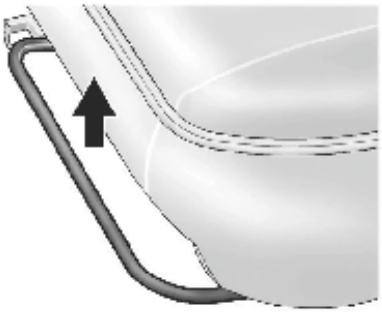
⚠ Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

Danger

Do not sit nearer than 25cm (10in) to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

Seat Positioning



To adjust a Manual Seat:

1. Lift the bar under the front of the seat cushion to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the bar.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

POWER SEAT ADJUSTMENT
(Driver's Seat Only)
Seat Slide Adjustment

To move the seat forward or backward, move and hold the switch forward or backward.

When the seatback reaches the desired position, release the switch.

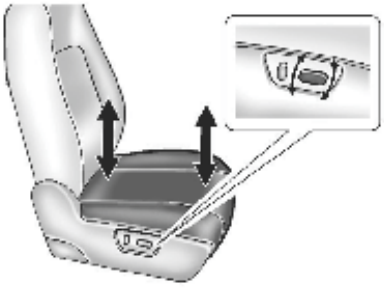
⚠ Warning

Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving.

Driver could lose control of the vehicle and injury or property damage could result.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat Height Adjustment



To adjust the height of the front or rear part of the seat cushion, push the front or rear part of the switch up or down.

When the seatback reaches the desired position, release the switch.

LUMBAR ADJUSTMENT
(Driver's Seat Only)

To increase or decrease the driver's seat lumbar support, move the lever forward or rearward.

RECLINING SEATBACKS

⚠ Warning

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the safety belts cannot do their job.

The shoulder belt will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the safety belt properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.

Manual Reclining Seatback (Passenger's Seat)

⚠ Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving.

Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

To recline a Manual Seatback:

1. Lift the lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback, and the seatback will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Power Reclining Seatback (Driver's Seat Only)

To tilt seatback forward or backward, move and hold the upper part of the switch forward or backward.

When the seatback reaches the desired position, release the switch.

FOLDING SEATBACK

Passenger's Seatback Folding

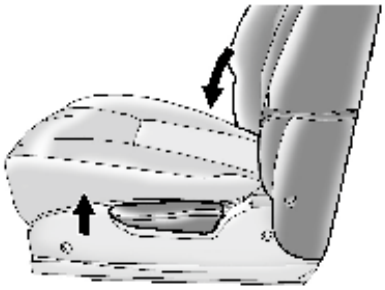
⚠ Warning

If you fold the seatback forward to carry longer objects, such as skis, be sure any such cargo is not near an airbag. In a crash, an inflating airbag might force that object toward a person. This could cause severe injury or even death. Secure objects away from the area in which an airbag would inflate. For more information, see Vehicle Load Limits on page 8-9 and Where Are the Airbags? on page 2-24.

⚠ Warning

Things you put on this seatback can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash. Remove or secure all items before driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



To fold the seatback:

1. Lower the head restraint completely.
2. Lift the bar under the front of the seat cushion to unlock the seat. Slide the seat as far back as it will go and release the bar.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to make sure it is locked into place.
4. Lift the recliner lever and fold the seatback forward until it disengages.
5. Continue folding the seatback until it is completely folded.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Raise the seatback and push it rearward until it re-engages.

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked in place.

The lever is also used to recline the seatback. See Reclining Seatbacks on page 2-6.

REAR SEATS

SECOND ROW SEATS

Folding the Rear Seatback

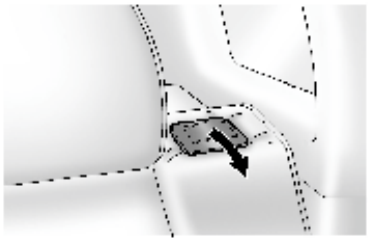
Caution

Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

To fold a seatback:

1. Unbuckle the rear safety belts and put the front seatback in the upright position. See Reclining Seatbacks on page 2-6.
2. Push the headrests down all the way. See Head Restraints Position on page 2-2.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Lift the lever on top of the seatback to unlock the seatback. Then, fold the seatback forward.
4. Repeat Steps 1-3 for the other seatback, if desired.

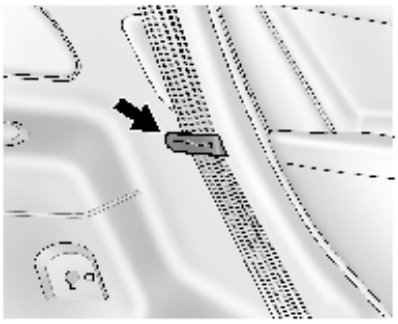
Returning the Rear Seatback to the Upright Position

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ Warning

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seat back, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.



To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Place the safety belts in the safety belt guides on the vehicle trim.
2. Lift the seatback up and push it back into place.
3. Remove the safety belts from the safety belt guides on the vehicle trim.

   Make sure the safety belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.
4. Push and pull the top of the seatback to be sure it is locked into position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Repeat Steps 1-4 for the other seatback, if necessary.

When the seatback is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

Reclining the Rear Seatback

To recline the seatback:

1. Lift and hold the lever on top of the seatback.
2. Tilt the seatback rearward, and then release the lever.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 for the other seatback, if desired.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift and hold the lever on top of the seatback.
2. Pull the seatback forward to the upright position, and then release the lever.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.
4. Repeat Steps 1-3 for the other seatback, if necessary.

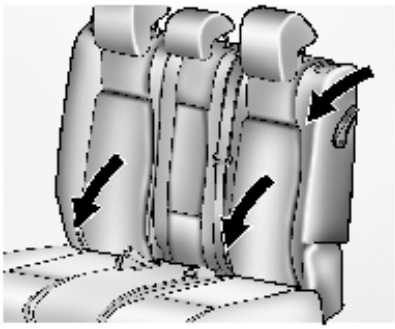
Tumbling the Second-Row Seats

Caution
A second-row seat cannot be tumbled when the seatback is in the folded position. The second-row seatback must be in the upright position before using the lever on the outboard side of the seatback to tumble the seat. Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

Second-row seats can be tumbled to access the third-row seat.

To tumble the seat:

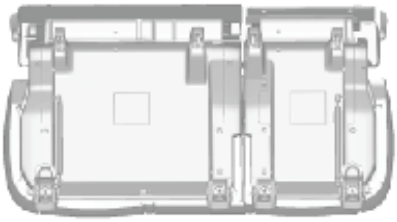
1. Unbuckle the rear safety belts and put the front seatback in the upright position. See Reclining Seatbacks on page 2-6.



2. Push the headrests down all the way. See Head Restraints Position on page 2-2.
3. Pull the lever forward on the outside of the seatback and fold the seatback.
   The seat will tumble forward automatically and air-pressurised support rods will hold the seats folded.
4. Repeat Steps 1-3 for the other seat, if desired.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Returning the Second-Row Seats from the Tumbled Position



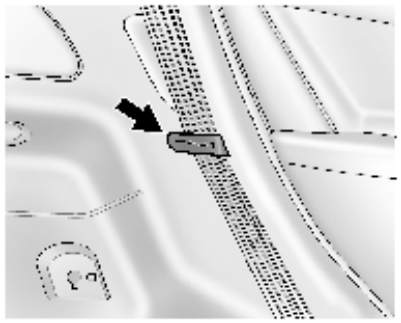
⚠ Warning

To avoid injury, do not place toes or feet on top of or under the second-row seats while the second-row seats are being returned to the sitting position from the tumbled position.

Third-row-seat passengers should keep their feet on the floor.

Before returning a tumbled seat to the sitting position, clear the area under and around the seat base.

Make sure third-row-seat passengers use the footprints on the vehicle floor as a guide for proper foot placement while returning the second-row seats to the sitting position.



To return a seat to the sitting position:

1. Place the safety belts in the safety belt guides on the vehicle trim.
2. Pull the seat base towards the vehicle floor and push down on the seat to secure it.
3. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked in place.
4. Raise the seatback to the upright position. See “Returning the Seatback to the Upright Position” earlier in this section.
5. Remove the safety belts from the safety belt guides on the vehicle trim.

   Make sure the safety belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.
6. Repeat Steps 1-5 for the other seat, if necessary.

Caution

Do not pull the lever when the seatback is folded. This operation can cause damage to the lever or related parts.

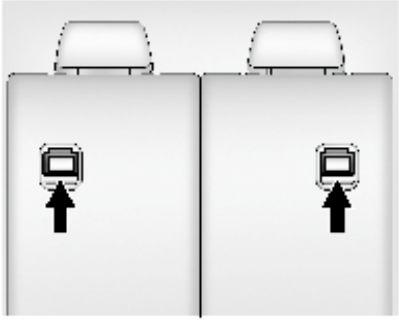
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

THIRD ROW SEATS

Folding the Seatback

Caution

Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.



To fold a seatback:

1. Unbuckle the safety belts in the third row seats.
2. Lift the handle on the back of the third row seatback. The headrest will release and fold forward automatically.
3. Grasping the handle, fold the seatback forward and release it.
4. Repeat Steps 2 and 3 for the other seatback, if desired.

Returning the Seatback to the Upright Position

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ Warning

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the seatback up and push it back into place.
2. Push and pull on the top of the seatback to be sure it is locked into position.
3. Return the headrest to the upright position by lifting it up and pushing it rearward.

   Push and pull on the headrest to make sure that it is locked in place.
4. Repeat Steps 1-3 for the other seatback, if necessary.

When the seatback is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

SAFETY BELTS

SAFETY BELTS

This section of the manual describes how to use safety belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with safety belts.

⚠ Warning

Do not let anyone ride where a safety belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing safety belts, injuries can be much worse than if you are wearing safety belts. You can be seriously injured or killed by hitting things inside the vehicle harder or by being ejected from the vehicle. In addition, anyone who is not buckled up can strike other passengers in the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, passengers riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow passengers to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts.

Always wear a safety belt, and check that all passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. See Safety Belt Reminder on page 4-16 for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Why Safety Belts Work

When riding in a vehicle, you travel as fast as the vehicle does. If the vehicle stops suddenly, you keep going until something stops you. It could be the windshield, the instrument panel, or the safety belts!

When you wear a safety belt, you and the vehicle slow down together. There is more time to stop because you stop over a longer distance and, when worn properly, your strongest bones take the forces from the safety belts. That is why wearing safety belts makes such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?

A: You could be - whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. Your chance of being conscious during and after a crash, so you can unbuckle and get out, is much greater if you are belted.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work with safety belts - not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection.

Also, in nearly all regions, the law requires wearing safety belts.

HOW TO WEAR SAFETY BELTS PROPERLY

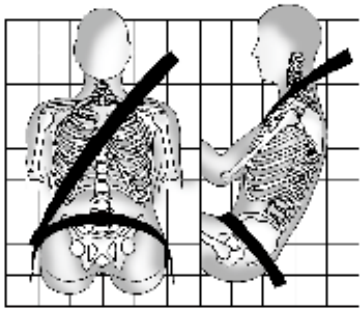
This section is only for people of adult size.

There are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see Older Children on page 2-30 or Infants and Young Children on page 2-32. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

There are important things to know about wearing a safety belt properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



- Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you.
- Always use the correct buckle for your seating position.
- Wear the lap part of the belt low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.
- Wear the shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces. The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

⚠ Warning

You can be seriously injured, or even killed, by not wearing your safety belt properly.

- Never allow the lap or shoulder belt to become loose or twisted.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under both arms or behind your back.
- Never route the lap or shoulder belt over an armrest.

LAP-SHOULDER BELT

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt except for the second row center position which may have a lap belt. See Lap Belt on page 2-20 for more information.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

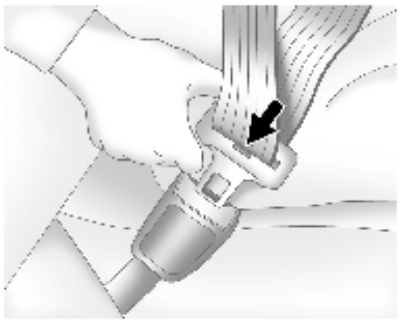
1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

   If the shoulder portion of a passenger belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.

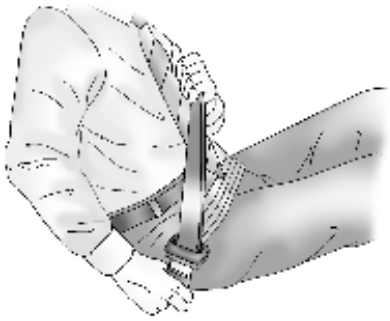


3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

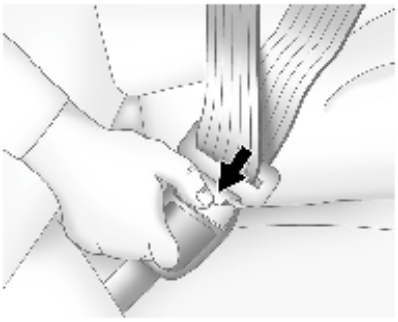
4. If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. See “Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster” later in this section for instructions on use and important safety information.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   It may be necessary to pull the stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



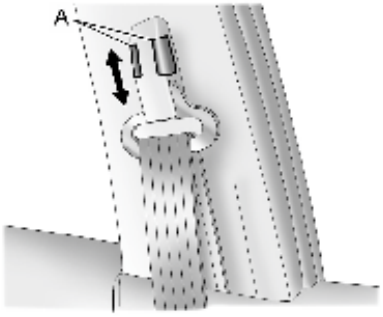
To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position. Slide the latch plate up the safety belt webbing when the safety belt is not in use. The latch plate should rest on the stitching on the safety belt, near the guide loop on the side wall.

Before a door is closed, be sure the safety belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a safety belt, damage can occur to both the safety belt and the vehicle.

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

The vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and outboard front passenger seating positions.

Adjust the height so that the shoulder portion of the belt is centered on the shoulder. The belt should be away from the face and neck, but not falling off of the shoulder. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.



Squeeze the release buttons (A) together and move the height adjuster up or down to the desired position.

After the adjuster is set to the desired position, try to move it up or down without squeezing the release buttons to make sure it has locked into position.

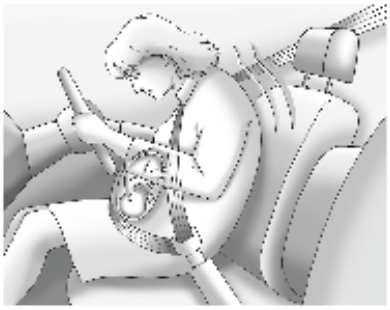
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Belt Pretensioners

The vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for the front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during a severe frontal crash, and side and rear impacts if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. Pretensioners are not designed to activate in a minor frontal crash. Pretensioners are designed to activate in a moderate to severe rear crash.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, the pretensioners and probably other new parts for the vehicle's safety belt system will need to be replaced. See Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash on page 2-21.

SAFETY BELT USE DURING PREGNANCY



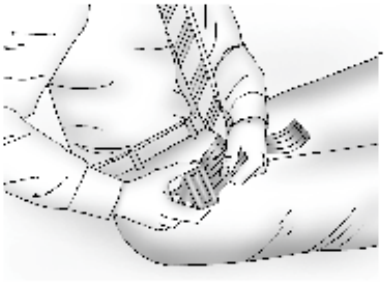
Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.

A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LAP BELT



This section is only for the lap belt. To learn how to wear a lap-shoulder belt, see Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 2-16.

The vehicle may have a second row center seating position with a lap belt. The lap belt has no retractor.

To make the belt longer, tilt the latch plate and pull it along the belt. Buckle, position and release it the same way as the lap part of a lap-shoulder belt.

To make the belt shorter, pull its free end as shown until the belt is snug.

Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.

If you find that the latch plate will not go fully into the buckle, see if you are using the correct buckle. Be sure that the latch plate clicks when inserted into the buckle.

To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle.

SAFETY SYSTEM CHECK

Now and then, check that the safety belt reminder light, safety belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are all working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job. See your CHEVROLET retailer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See Safety Belt Reminder on page 4-16.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See Safety Belt Care on page 2-21.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SAFETY BELT CARE

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

REPLACING SAFETY BELT SYSTEM PARTS AFTER A CRASH

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the safety belt system in the vehicle. A damaged safety belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the safety belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

After a minor crash, replacement of safety belts may not be necessary. But the safety belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your CHEVROLET retailer to have the safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the safety belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See Airbag Readiness Light on page 4-16 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AIRBAG SYSTEM

AIRBAG SYSTEM

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the outboard front passenger.

The vehicle may have the following airbags:

- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the outboard front passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the outboard front passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the outboard front passenger.

All of the airbags in the vehicle will have the word AIRBAG embossed in the trim or on an attached label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the middle part of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the outboard front passenger.

With seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

With roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear along the trim.

⚠ Warning

Be sure that cargo is not near an airbag. In a crash, an inflating airbag might force that object toward a person. This could cause severe injury or even death. Secure objects away from the area in which an airbag would inflate. For more information, see Where Are the Airbags? on page 2-24 and Vehicle Load Limits on page 8-9.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ Warning

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt, even with airbags. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts, not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to inflate in every crash. In some crashes safety belts are the only restraint. See When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 2-25.

Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce the chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the safety belts. Everyone in the vehicle should wear a safety belt properly, whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Because airbags inflate with great force and faster than the blink of an eye, anyone who is up against, or very close to any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to any airbag, as you would be if sitting on the edge of the seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear a safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

⚠ Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in the vehicle. To read how, see Older Children on page 2-30 or Infants and Young Children on page 2-32.

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See Airbag Readiness Light on page 4-16 for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WHERE ARE THE AIRBAGS?

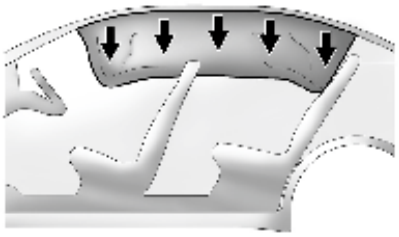
The driver frontal airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

The outboard front passenger frontal airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger side.

Passenger Side Shown, Driver Side Similar

If the vehicle has seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and outboard front passenger, they are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

If the vehicle has roof-rail airbags for the driver, outboard front passenger, and second row outboard passengers, they are in the ceiling above the side windows.

⚠ Warning

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie-down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

WHEN SHOULD AN AIRBAG INFLATE?

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries mainly to the driver's or outboard front passenger's head and chest. However, they are only designed to inflate if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should deploy is not based on how fast your vehicle is traveling. It depends largely on what you hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly your vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds. For example:

- If the vehicle hits a stationary object, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a moving object.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- If the vehicle hits an object that deforms, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits an object that does not deform.
- If the vehicle hits a narrow object (like a pole), the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a wide object (like a wall).
- If the vehicle goes into an object at an angle, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle goes straight into the object.

Thresholds can also vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

Always wear your safety belt, even with frontal airbags.

The vehicle may have seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags. See Airbag System on page 2-22. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed threshold level. The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are not intended to inflate in frontal impacts, near frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts. Roof-rail airbags are not intended to inflate in rollovers or rear impacts.

A seat-mounted side impact airbag and roof-rail airbags are intended to deploy on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal airbags, inflation is determined by what the vehicle hits, the angle of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down. For seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags, deployment is determined by the location and severity of the side impact.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WHAT MAKES AN AIRBAG INFLATE?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover and deploy. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module. Frontal airbag modules are located inside the steering wheel and instrument panel. For vehicles with seat-mounted side impact airbags, there are airbag modules in the side of the front seatbacks closest to the door. For vehicles with roof-rail airbags, there are airbag modules in the ceiling of the vehicle, near the side windows that have occupant seating positions.

HOW DOES AN AIRBAG RESTRAIN?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Frontal airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 2-25 for more information.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

WHAT WILL YOU SEE AFTER AN AIRBAG INFLATES?

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they inflate. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbags, see Where Are the Airbags? on page 2-24.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn the interior lamps on, turn the hazard warning flashers on, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. You can lock the doors, turn the interior lamps off, and turn the hazard warning flashers off by using the controls for those features.

⚠ Warning

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if you should attempt to restart the engine after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the front outboard passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for the vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your CHEVROLET retailer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICING THE AIRBAG -EQUIPPED VEHICLE

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your CHEVROLET retailer and the Service Manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system.

⚠ Warning

For up to 10 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

AIRBAG SYSTEM CHECK

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See Airbag Readiness Light on page 4-16.

Caution

If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag covers, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbags, see Where Are the Airbags? on page 2-24. See your CHEVROLET retailer for service.

REPLACING AIRBAG SYSTEM PARTS AFTER A CRASH

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle. A damaged airbag system may not work properly and may not protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your CHEVROLET retailer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. See Airbag Readiness Light on page 4-16.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHILD RESTRAINTS

OLDER CHILDREN

Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

The manufacturer's instructions that come with the booster seat, state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the below fit test:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

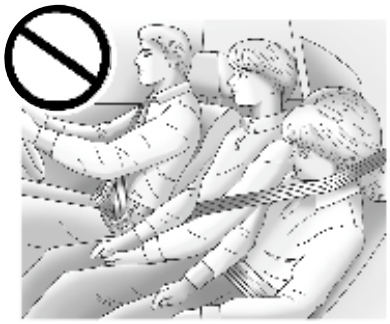
Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



⚠ Warning

Never allow more than one child to wear the same safety belt. The safety belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, they can be crushed together and seriously injured. A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time.

⚠ Warning

Never allow a child to wear the safety belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INFANTS AND YOUNG CHILDREN

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints.

⚠ Warning

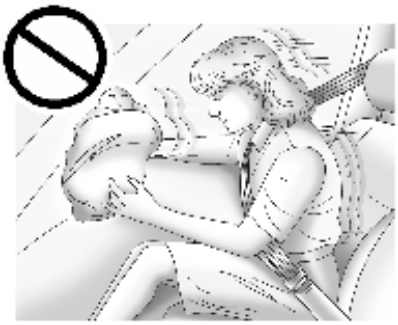
Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



⚠ Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, besure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

⚠ Warning

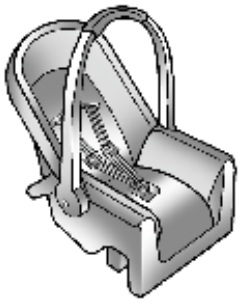
To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. In a crash, if an infant is in a rear-facing child restraint, the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS



(A) Rear-Facing Infant Seat

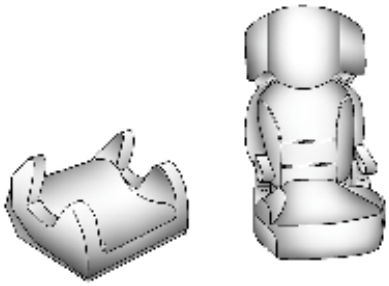
A rear-facing infant seat (A) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.

(B) Forward-Facing Child Seat

A forward-facing child seat (B) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



(C) Booster Seats

A booster seat (C) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* on page 2-37 for more information. Children can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and in this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle - even when no child is in it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

⚠ Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

WHERE TO PUT THE RESTRAINT

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

We recommend that children and child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Secure rearfacing child restraints in a rear seat.

A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the outboard front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the outboard front passenger seat, always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others. Always make sure the child restraint is properly secured.

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent safety belt assemblies or LATCH anchors for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the safety belt.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle - even when no child is in it.

LOWER ANCHORS AND TETHERS FOR CHILDREN (LATCH SYSTEM) (Option)

The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving or in a crash. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint that are made for use with the LATCH system.

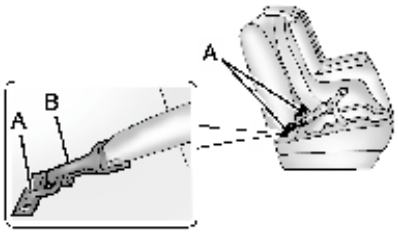
Make sure that a LATCH-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether and anchor.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in your vehicle.

Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments.

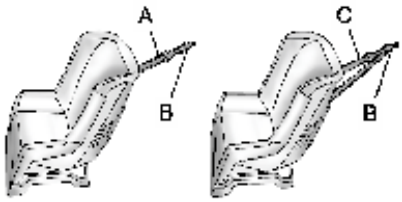
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (A) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (B).

Top Tether Anchor



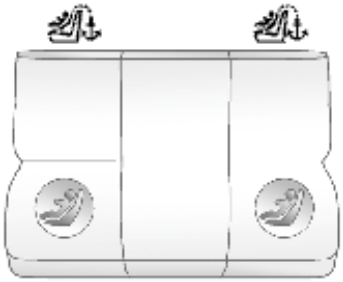
A top tether (A, C) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (B) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

Your child restraint may have a single tether (A) or a dual tether (C). Either will have a single attachment (B) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints that have a top tether are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

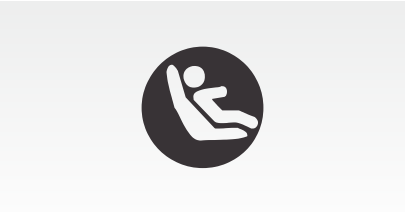
Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations*



Rear Seat

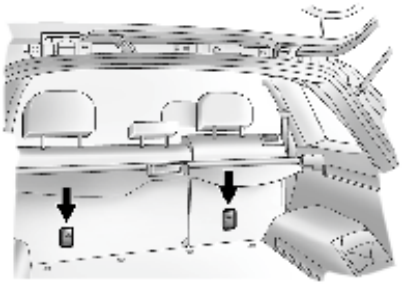
(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.



To assist in locating the lower anchors, each seating position with lower anchors has two labels, near the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.

To assist in locating the top tether anchors, the top tether anchor symbol is near the anchor.



Top Tether Anchors

The top tether anchors for the outboard rear seating positions are on the back of the rear seatback. Be sure to use an anchor on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position. See Where to Put the Restraint on page 2-36 for additional information.

SECURING A CHILD RESTRAINT DESIGNED FOR THE LATCH SYSTEM

Warning

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the child restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Install a LATCH-type child restraint properly using the anchors, or use the vehicle safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

Warning

Do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, attach only one child restraint per anchor.

Warning

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Buckle any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if the vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed.

Caution

Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's safety belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled safety belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.

Do not fold the empty rear seat with a safety belt buckled. This could damage the safety belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the safety belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Make sure to attach the child restraint at the proper anchor location.

This system is designed to make installation of child restraints easier. When using lower anchors, do not use the vehicle's safety belts. Instead use the vehicle's anchors and child restraint attachments to secure the restraints. Some restraints also use another vehicle anchor to secure a top tether.

1. Attach and fasten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.

   1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position. Make sure there are no foreign objects around lower anchors. Foreign objects can interfere with the proper latching of the child restraint to the anchors.

   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

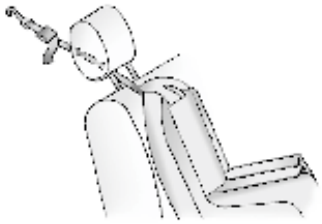
   1.3. Attach and fasten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.

2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor, if equipped. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:

   2.1. Find the top tether anchor.

   2.2. You may need to adjust the rear compartment storage panel/cover in the rear cargo area to access the anchors.

   2.3. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



- If the rear outboard seating position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the headrest or head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- If the rear outboard seating position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, raise the head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and around the headrest or head restraint posts.

3. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions.

REPLACING LATCH SYSTEM* PARTS AFTER A CRASH

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the LATCH system in the vehicle. A damaged LATCH system may not properly secure the child restraint, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the LATCH system is working properly after a crash, see your CHEVROLET retailer to have the system inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, new LATCH system parts may be needed.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the LATCH system was not being used at the time of the crash.

SECURING CHILD RESTRAINTS

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 2-37 for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 2-37 for top tether anchor locations.

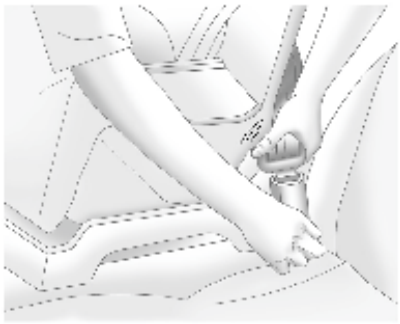
Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

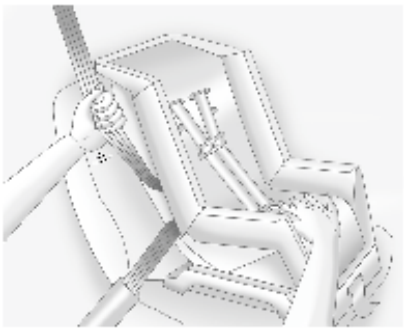
If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read Where to Put the Restraint on page 2-36.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



4. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   If the child restraint system has a lock-off mechanism, use it to secure the vehicle safety belt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 2-37 for more information.
6. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See Where to Put the Restraint on page 2-36.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the outboard front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the outboard front passenger seat, always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a child restraint, a child restraint should not be installed in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STORAGE

Storage Compartments
Instrument Panel Storage 3-1
Glove Box 3-1
Cupholders 3-2
Sunglasses Storage 3-3
Card Holder..... 3-3
Coin Storage 3-3
Center Console Storage 3-4
Underseat Storage* 3-4
Roof Paneling
Assist Grip With Coat Hook 3-4
Additional Storage Features
Convenience Net 3-5
Warning Triangle.....3-6
Roof Rack System
Roof Rack 3-6
Information On Loading the Vehicle
Information On Loading the Vehicle 3-7

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

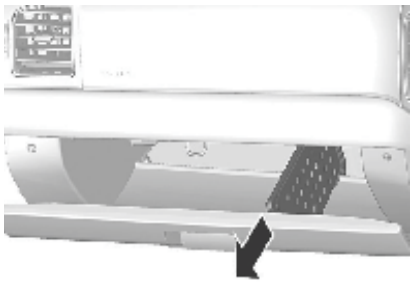
INSTRUMENT PANEL STORAGE

There is a storage compartment on the instrument panel. Push the handle to open.

GLOVE BOX

Open the glove box by pulling the bottom of the handle upward and the glove box lamp will be turned on. Close the glove box with a firm push and the glove box lamp will be turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



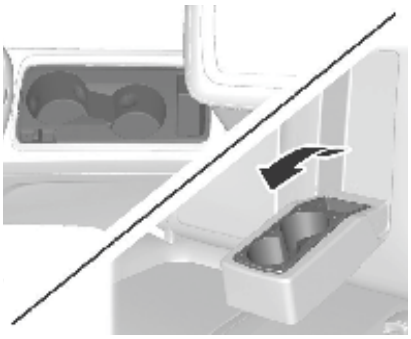
The inner partition can be removed if you want to store larger items.

After taking inner partition off, keep it in the right side groove of the glove box.

⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.

CUPHOLDERS



There are cupholders in the center console and in the second row seat armrest.

Pull down the armrest to access the cupholders.

⚠ Warning

Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

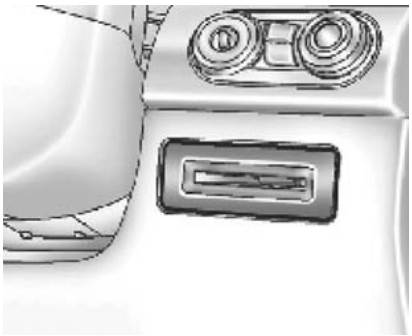
SUNGLASSES STORAGE

If equipped, the sunglasses holder is in the overhead console. To open it, push on the rear of the cover.

Close it by pushing up until it latches.

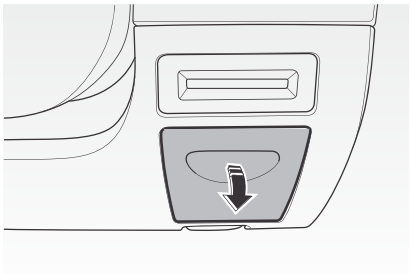
⚠ Warning
Do not use for storing heavy objects.

CARD HOLDER



You can use the card holder by inserting a card into slot.

COIN STORAGE



To open the coin storage, pull the handle on the coin storage door towards you.

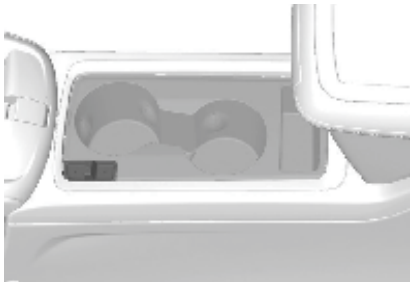
To close the coin storage, firmly push the coin storage door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CENTER CONSOLE STORAGE

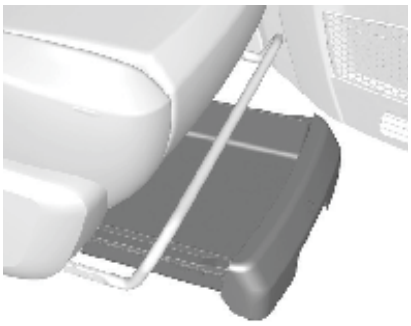
To open the console box, pull up on the lever and lift lid.

To close the console box, lower the lid and push it down until it latches.



You can use another storage by pressing and pushing the lever on the cup holders.

UNDERSEAT STORAGE*



To use the front passenger seat undertray, pull up on the end of the tray and pull it toward the instrument panel. Push the tray toward the seat to return it to its original position.

ROOF PANELING

ASSIST GRIP WITH COAT HOOK

Your vehicle has assist grips above the front seat passenger's door and the rear doors. The grip above each rear door includes coat hook.

To use the assist grips, pull down and hold it. The grips will swing up automatically when releasing it.

Passengers can use the grips for assistance in entering / exiting the vehicle, or for hand-holds during spirited driving.

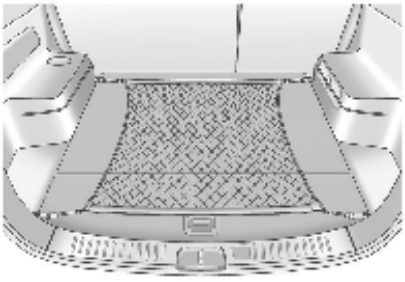
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution
Hanging items on your vehicle's assist grips can obstruct the driver's view. Do not hang anything on the assist grips, unless they are equipped with a coat hook. Obstructing the driver's view can lead to an accident resulting in personal injuries and damage to your vehicle or other property.

ADDITIONAL STORAGE FEATURES

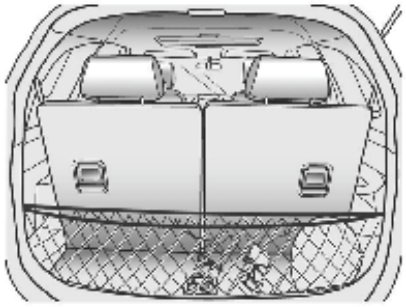
CONVENIENCE NET

Luggage Floor Net



The luggage floor net can help keep small loads from moving during sharp turns or quick starts and stops.
Attach the four net hooks in the metal rings on the each corner of the floor.

Luggage Holder Net



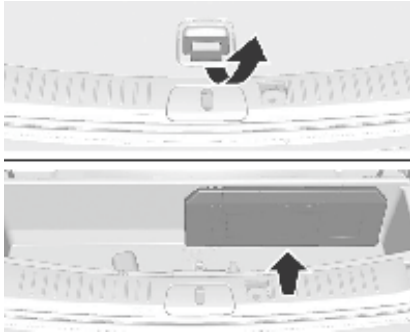
You can carry small loads with your optional luggage holding net.

To install the net, hang each loop in the upper corner of the net to both anchors of the back panel and two net hooks in the metal rings on the both lower corner of the floor.

Caution
The luggage holding net is designed for small loads. Do not carry heavy objects in your luggage holding net.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING TRIANGLE



The warning triangle is stored under the luggage compartment floor.

To pull out the warning triangle, lift the luggage compartment floor handle upward.

ROOF RACK SYSTEM

ROOF RACK

The roof rack can be used to conveniently carry additional cargo, or bulky items, such as bicycles, which are better carried outside than inside. The roof rack has side rails attached to the roof. Consult CHEVROLET retailer for details and regulations on driving with a loaded roof rack.

Ensure that the load is evenly distributed over the side or cross rails. The roof surface must not be loaded.

A loaded luggage carrier alters the vehicle's centre of gravity. Drive carefully when in crosswinds and do not drive at high speeds.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo as you are driving, check frequently to make sure your cargo are securely fastened.

⚠ Warning

The maximum load for the roof rack rails is 220lbs (100kg). Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading your vehicle.

⚠ Warning

If you try to carry something on top of your vehicle that is longer or wider than the roof rack, the wind can catch it as you drive along.

This can cause you to lose control. What you are carrying could be violently torn off, and this could cause you or other drivers to have a collision, and of course damage your vehicle.

Never carry something longer or wider than the roof rack on top of your vehicle.

A loaded roof rack changes the vehicle's centre of gravity. Do not drive at high speeds. Take precautions when driving in crosswinds.

Failure to follow this caution can result in vehicle damage and personal injury.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INFORMATION ON LOADING THE VEHICLE

INFORMATION ON LOADING THE VEHICLE

- Heavy object in the tailgate should be placed against the seat backrests. Ensure the backrests are securely engaged. If objects can be stacked, the heavier object should be placed at the bottom.
- Secure objects in tailgate to prevent sliding.
- When transporting objects in the tailgate, the backrests of the rear seats must not be angled forward.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not place any objects on the tailgate cover or the instrument panel, do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open tailgate.
- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently. Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading the vehicle. For more information on vehicle capacity and loading, see Vehicle Load Limits on page 8-9.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

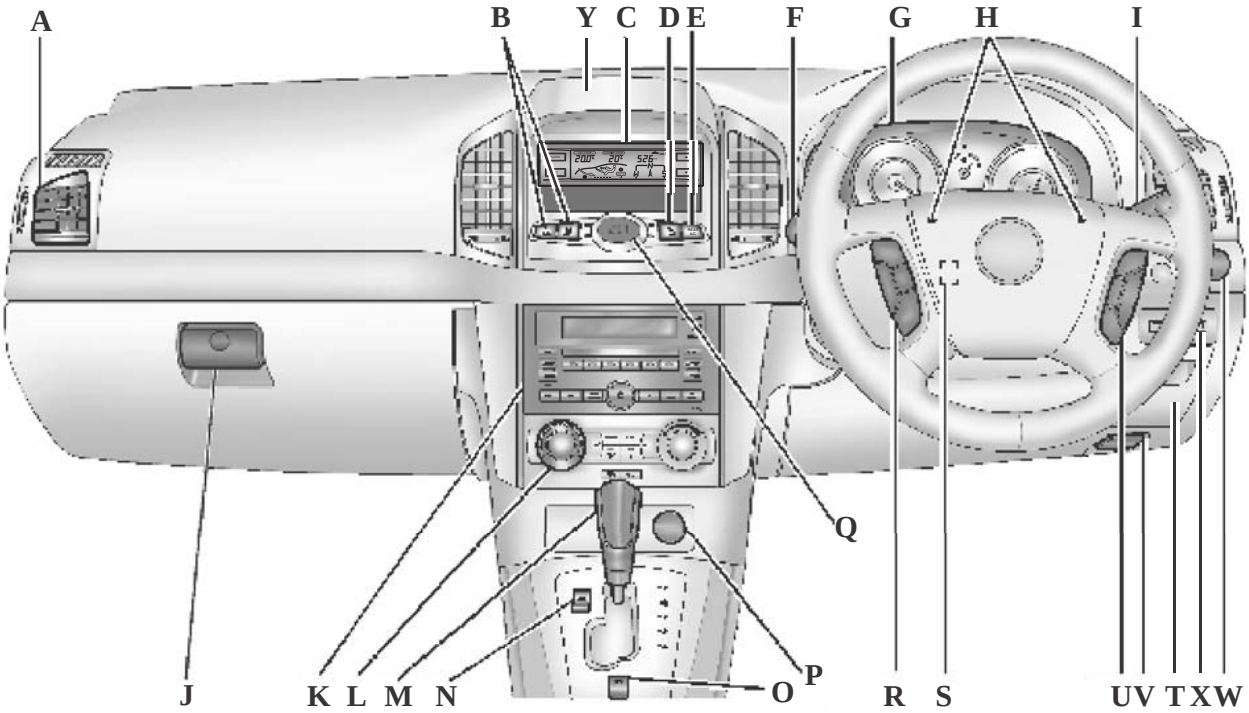
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Instrument Panel Overview
Instrument Panel Overview 4-2
Controls
Steering Wheel Adjustment 4-4
Steering Wheel Controls 4-4
Horn 4-5
Windshield Wiper/Washer 4-5
Rear Window Wiper/Washer .. 4-7
Clock 4-9
Power Outlets 4-9
Cigarette Lighter 4-11
Ashtrays 4-12
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 4-12
Instrument Cluster 4-13
Speedometer 4-14
Odometer 4-14
Trip Odometer 4-14
Tachometer 4-15
Fuel Gauge 4-15
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 4-16
Safety Belt Reminder 4-16
Airbag Readiness Light 4-16
Charging System Light 4-17
Diesel Particulate Filter Light* 4-17
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 4-18
Reduced Engine Power Light* 4-19
Service Vehicle Soon Light .. 4-20
Brake System Warning Light ... 4-20
Electric Parking Brake Light ... 4-21
Apply FootBrake Light 4-21
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 4-22
All-Wheel-Drive Light (AWD Only) 4-22
Descent Control System Light* 4-23
Ultrasonic Parking Sensor Light 4-23
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light* 4-24
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light* 4-24
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 4-25
Wait-to-Start Light 4-26
Engine Oil Pressure Light 4-26
Low Engine Oil Level Light .. 4-27
Change Engine Oil Light 4-27
Fuel Economy Light* 4-28
Low Fuel Warning Light 4-28
Water in Fuel Warning Light . 4-29
Immobilizer Light 4-29
Turn Signal Lights.....4-30
High-Beam On Light 4-30
Front Fog Lamp Light 4-30
Rear Fog Lamp Light 4-31
Lamps On Reminder Light ... 4-31
Cruise Control Light 4-31
Door Ajar Light 4-32
Gate Ajar Light 4-32
Transmission Display 4-32
Information Displays
Driver Information Center.....4-33
Trip Computer
Trip Computer 4-34

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. Air Vents on page 7-9.

B. Hazard Warning Flashers on page 5-3.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* on page 8-32.

C. Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 4-33.

D. Descent Control System (DCS)* on page 8-33.

E. Rear Air Conditioning System Button. See Rear Air Conditioning System on page 7-8.

F. Turn and Lane-Change Lever. See Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 5-4.

Exterior Lamp Controls on page 5-1.

Front Fog Lamps on page 5-4.

Rear Fog Lamps on page 5-5.

G. Instrument Cluster on page 4-13.

H. Horn on page 4-5.

I. Windshield Wiper/Washer on page 4-5.

Rear Window Wiper/Washer on page 4-7.

J. Glove Box on page 3-1.

K. Audio System on page 6-1.

L. Automatic Climate Control System on page 7-1.

M. Shift Lever. See Automatic Transmission on page 8-21.

N. ECO Button*. See Fuel Economy Mode on page 8-25.

O. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Switch on page 8-29.

P. Cigarette Lighter on page 4-11.

Q. Clock on page 4-9.

R. Steering Wheel Controls on page 4-4.

S. Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 4-4.

T. Coin Storage on page 3-3.

U. Cruise Control on page 8-34.

V. Hood Release Lever. See Hood on page 9-3.

W. Power Mirrors on page 1-13.

Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 5-6.

Headlamp Range Adjustment on page 5-3.

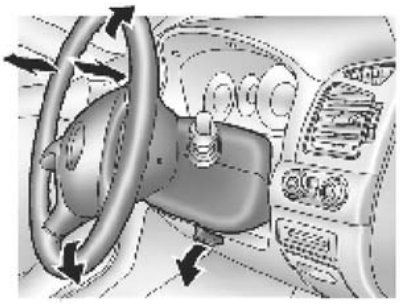
X. Card Holder on page 3-3.

Y. Instrument Panel Storage on page 3-1.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONTROLS

STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT



Tilt Wheel

For vehicles with a tilt wheel:

1. Hold the steering wheel and pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Tilt and Telescoping Wheel

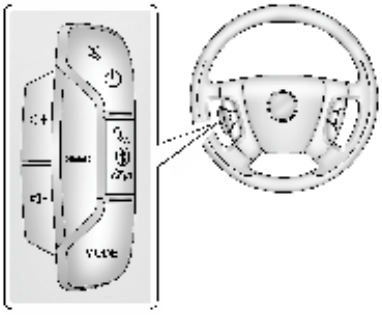
For vehicles with a tilt and telescoping wheel:

1. Hold the steering wheel and pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Caution
If strong impact delivers to steering column axle direction when the steering wheel is adjusted or the lever is locked, it may cause damage to the parts related to steering wheel.

STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



For vehicles equipped with audio steering wheel controls, basic audio system operations can be performed.

/ (Mute/Power): Press to turn on the system. Press to mute audio while the radio is on. Press and hold to turn off radio.

/ / (Push to Talk / Bluetooth / End Call): Press once to answer or make a call. Press to access the Bluetooth menu (if equipped). Press twice to dial a call. Press and hold to cancel, decline, or hang up a call. See Bluetooth on page 6-12 for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEEK: Press to go to the next preset radio station. Press and hold to search for the next station.

MODE: Press to toggle through radio modes as follows: FM-AM-CD-AUX-FM.

+: Press to increase volume.

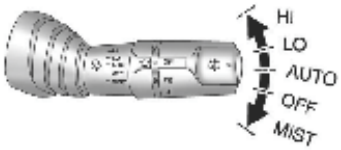
–: Press to decrease volume.

HORN

Press on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

WINDSHIELD WIPER/WASHER

Windshield Wiper



The windshield wiper lever is located on the side of the steering column. The ignition must be turned to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN to operate the windshield wipers.

Move the lever to one of the following positions:

HI: Continuous wipes, fast speed

LO: Continuous wipes, slow speed

AUTO : Automatic

OFF : System off

MIST : Misting function

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Misting function

To operate the windshield wipers once in case of light rain or mist, lightly press the windshield wiper/washer level down and release it. The lever will return automatically to its normal position when released. The wipers will operate through one cycle.

Caution

Less than clear vision for the driver can lead to an accident resulting in personal injury and damage to your vehicle or other property.

Do not operate the windshield wipers when the windshield is dry or obstructed, as with snow or ice. Using the wipers on an obstructed windshield can damage the wiper blades, wiper motor, and glass.

Check blades are not frozen to windows before operating in cold weather. Wiper operation while blade is frozen can damage wiper motor.

Automatic Windshield Wipers With Rainsense

For vehicles with automatic windshield wipers with Rainsense, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windshield and automatically adjusts the windshield wipers.

AUTO: Turns the windshield wipers on automatically.

The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by turning the band on the windshield wiper lever toward F or S.

When the wiper lever is moved to AUTO position while the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ ACCESSORY, the windshield wipers turn on once to check the system.

OFF: Turns the automatic windshield wiper system off.

The rain sensor is located near the top of the windshield and must be free from dust and dirt to work properly. See Wiper Blade Replacement on page 9-29.

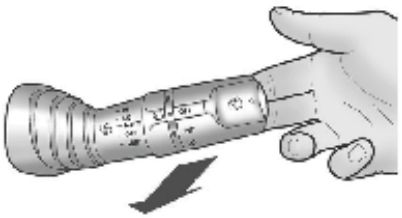
The wipers are not operated when shift lever of automatic transaxle is in "N" position and vehicle speed is lower than 5 km/h.

Caution

Do not switch on the windscreen wiper or set them to automatic operation with rain sensor in car washes. This could damage the wiper blades or wiper system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield Washer



The ignition must be turned to ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY and pull the windshield washer/wiper lever toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield.

When the lever is pulled and immediately released, windshield washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield, but the windshield wipers do not turn on.

When the lever is pulled and held briefly, windshield washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield. The wipers operate for two wipe cycles after the lever is released and one more cycle after 3 seconds. See Washer Fluid on page 9-22 for information on filling the windshield washer fluid.

⚠ Warning

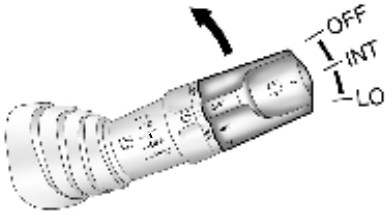
In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

Caution

Do not operate the windshield washer continuously for more than some seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty. This can cause the washer motor to overheat resulting in costly repairs.

REAR WINDOW WIPER / WASHER

Windshield Wiper



The vehicle may have a rear window wiper/washer. The ignition must be in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position to operate the rear window wiper/washer.

Turn the end of the windshield wiper lever to operate the rear window wiper/washer.

The tailgate wiper operates in the following three positions :

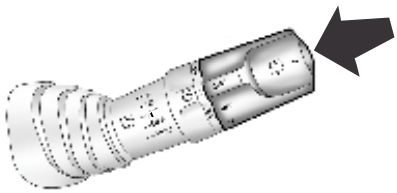
OFF : System off. Default position.

INT : Intermittent operation.

LO : Continuous wipe, slow speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Washer



To spray washer fluid on the rear window, press the button at the end of the lever until the washers begin. When the button is released, the washers stop, but the wipers continue to wipe for about three wipes.

⚠ Warning

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

Caution

Less than clear vision for the driver can lead to an accident resulting in personal injury and damage to your vehicle or other property.

Do not operate the tailgate window wiper when the tailgate window is dry or obstructed, as with snow or ice.

Using the wiper on an obstructed window can damage the wiper blade, wiper motor and glass.

Check blade is not frozen to window before operating in cold weather. Wiper operation while blade is frozen can damage wiper motor.

Do not spray washer fluid on the tailgate window in freezing weather.

Warm the tailgate window before you operate the tailgate window washer.

Rear Smart Wiper

For vehicles with this feature, the rear wiper turns on automatically when the shift lever is set to R (Reverse) while the front wiper is on.

The windshield washer reservoir is used for the windshield and rear window. Check the fluid level if either washer is not working. See Washer Fluid on page 9-22.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CLOCK

The digital clock is located above the radio.

When the ignition is in ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN, the digital clock displays the time. The digital clock has three adjusting buttons.

H: Hour button.

- To advance one hour, press the H button.
- To advance more than one hour, press and hold the H button until you reach the correct hour.

M: Minute button.

- To advance one minute, press the M button.
- To advance more than one minute, press and hold the M button until you reach the correct minute.

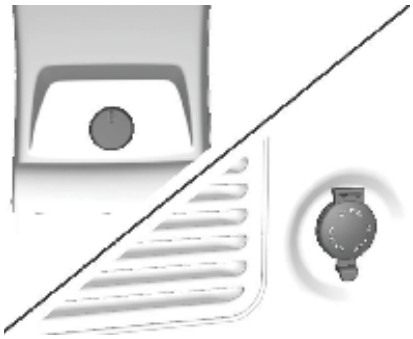
S: Reset button.

- To reset the time to the nearest hour, press the S button.
- If you press this button when the time is between 8:00 and 8:29 for example, the display will reset to 8:00.
- If you press this button while the time is between 8:30 and 8:59 for example, the display will reset to 9:00.

Note

Remember to reset your vehicle's clock each time you disconnect and then reconnect the battery or replace a fuse.

POWER OUTLETS



The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or an MP3 player.

A 12V power outlet is located below the backward of center console and on the left side of luggage compartment.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 watts.

With ignition OFF the power outlet is deactivated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additionally the power outlet is deactivated in case of low battery voltage.

Remove the cover to access and refix when not in use.

Caution

Do not connect any current delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the sockets by using unsuitable plugs.

⚠ Warning

Power is always supplied to the outlets. Do not leave electrical equipment plugged in when the vehicle is not in use because the vehicle could catch fire and cause injury or death.

Caution

Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 ampere rating.

Certain accessory power plugs may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload vehicle or adapter fuses. If a problem is experienced, see your CHEVROLET retailer.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment.

Caution

Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as cell phone charge cords.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CIGARETTE LIGHTER

To operate the cigarette lighter, turn the ignition switch to ACC or ON and push the lighter in all the way.

The cigarette lighter will pop out automatically when it is ready to use.

Caution

Overheating the cigarette lighter can damage the heating element and the lighter itself.

Do not hold the lighter in while it is heating. This can cause the lighter to overheat.

Trying to operate malfunctioning cigarette lighter can be dangerous. If the heated cigarette lighter does not pop out, pull it out and consult a CHEVROLET retailer to have it repaired. It can cause injuries and damage to your vehicle.

Caution

The cigarette socket should only be used with the cigarette lighter. If other 12V power adapters are installed into the cigarette socket, fuse failure or a potential thermal incident may occur.

⚠ Warning

If you leave the vehicle with an inflammable explosive substance, such as a disposable lighter, inside the car in summer, it can explode and cause fire due to an increase of temperature in the passenger compartment and the boot.

Please ensure that no inflammable explosive substances are left or kept inside the car.

Caution

The barrel of an operating cigarette lighter can become very hot.

Do not touch the barrel of the cigarette lighter and do not allow children to operate or play with the cigarette lighter.

This hot metal can cause personal injuries and damage to your vehicle or other property.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ASHTRAYS

For vehicles with a removable ashtray and cigarette lighter, the ashtray can be placed into the front console cupholders.

To open the ashtray, lift the lid of the ashtray. After using, close the lid.

To empty the ashtray for cleaning, slightly turn the upper part of the ashtray counterclockwise and remove it.

Caution
Cigarettes and other smoking materials could set them on fire. Do not put paper or other flammable items in the ashtray. An ashtray fire can lead to personal injury or damage to your vehicle or other property.

WARNING LIGHTS, GAUGES, AND INDICATORS

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

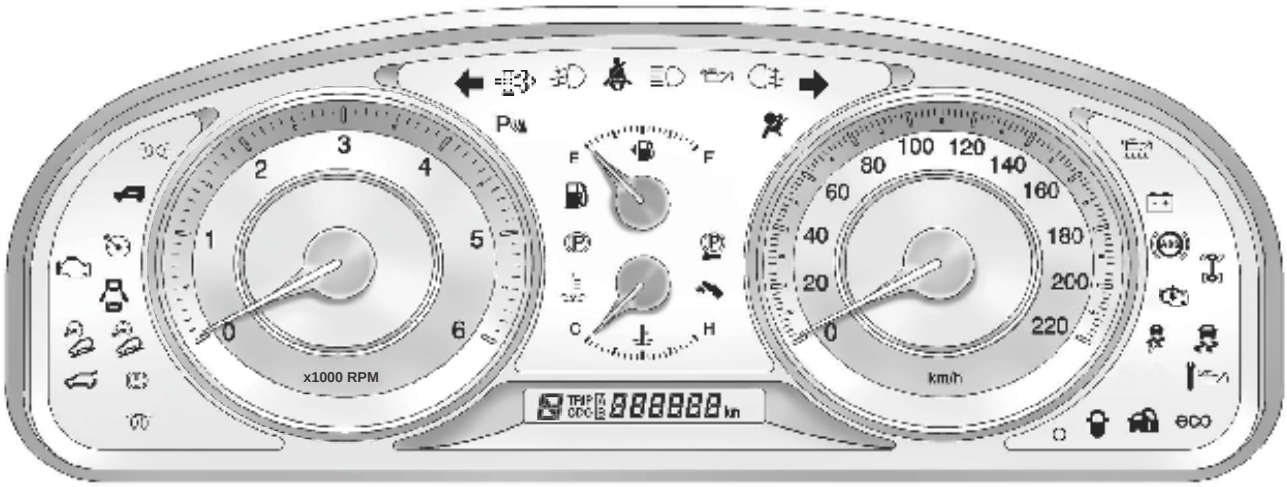
Warning lights come on when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

Gauges can indicate when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Often gauges and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

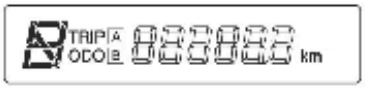


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SPEEDOMETER

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in kilometers per hour (km/h).

ODOMETER



The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven in kilometers.

TRIP ODOMETER

There are independent trip odometers, which measure the distance your vehicle has travelled since you last reset this function. To reset each trip meter to zero, press and hold the trip odometer button until it resets. The trip odometer button is located in the lower right area of the speedometer.

The odometer, trip A and trip B can be switched by pressing the trip odometer button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TACHOMETER

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm). Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.

Caution
If the needle is in the warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. Engine is at risk.

FUEL GAUGE

Displays the fuel level in the tank.

Never run the tank dry.

Because of the fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified tank capacity.

Movement of the fuel within the fuel tank causes the fuel gauge pointer to move when you brake, accelerate or turn.

Here are three things that some owners ask about. All these things are normal and do not indicate that anything is wrong with the fuel gauge:

- At the fuel station, the pump shuts off before the gauge reads full.
- It takes more, or less, fuel to fill up than the gauge reads. For example, the gauge reads half full, but it took more, or less, than half of the tank's capacity to fill it.
- The gauge pointer may move while cornering, braking or accelerating.

⚠ Warning
Before refueling, stop vehicle and switch off the engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Displays the engine coolant temperature.

If the gauge pointer moves toward the H, the engine is too hot.

This reading indicates the same thing as the warning light. It means that the engine coolant has overheated. If the vehicle has been operating under normal driving conditions, pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See Engine Overheating on page 9-19.

SAFETY BELT REMINDER

Driver Safety Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver safety belt reminder light on the instrument panel cluster.

When the engine is started, this light flashes for several seconds to remind a driver to fasten the safety belt. The light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue with a chime if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver safety belt is already buckled, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

AIRBAG READINESS LIGHT

This light shows if there is an electrical problem in airbag system. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), the pretensioners (if equipped), the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see Airbag System on page 2-22.

The airbag readiness light comes on and stays on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. Then the light goes out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle trouble or deployment of the belt tensioners or airbags may be indicated by continuous illumination of .

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

CHARGING SYSTEM LIGHT

The charging system light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned ON, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. The light turns off when the engine is started. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your CHEVROLET retailer. If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your CHEVROLET retailer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER LIGHT*

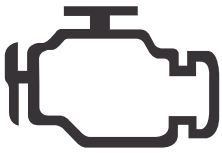
This light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned ON as a check to show the light is working.

It flashes if the diesel particulate filter requires cleaning and previous driving conditions did not permit automatic cleaning. Continue driving and if possible do not allow engine speed to drop below 2000 rpm.

It goes off as soon as the self cleaning operation is complete.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP



A computer system called OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) monitors operation of the fuel, ignition, and emission control systems. It ensures that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment.

This light comes on when the ignition is on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your CHEVROLET retailer.

If the check engine light comes on and stays on while the engine is running, this indicates that there is an OBD problem and service is required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. Being aware of the light can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle. This system assists the service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

Caution

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. See Accessories and Modifications on page 9-2.

Caution

If the vehicle is continuously driven with this light on, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

Light Flashing: A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

The following can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park. Turn the key off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your CHEVROLET retailer for service as soon as possible.

Light On Steady: An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

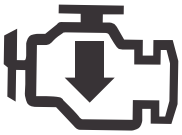
The following may correct an emission system malfunction:

- Check that the electrical system is not wet. The system could be wet if the vehicle was driven through a deep puddle of water. The condition is usually corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.
- Check that good quality fuel is used. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed and may cause: stalling after start-up, stalling when the vehicle is changed into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. These conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up.

  If one or more of these conditions occurs, change the fuel brand used. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off. See Fuel on page 8-38.

If none of the above have made the light turn off, your CHEVROLET retailer can check the vehicle. The CHEVROLET retailer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

REDUCED ENGINE POWER LIGHT*



This light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned ON as a check to show the light is working.

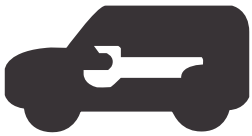
It illuminates with the service vehicle soon light when the vehicle needs a service.

Pull off the road, stop the engine and restart after 10 seconds.

The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE VEHICLE SOON LIGHT



The service vehicle soon light comes on when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN and goes out after several seconds.

It comes on if a condition exists that may require the vehicle to be taken in for service.

If the light comes on and stays on, take the vehicle to your CHEVROLET retailer for service as soon as possible.

BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING LIGHT

The warning light illuminates when the parking brake is released, if the brake fluid level is too low or if there is a brake system fault.

See Brake Fluid on page 9-24.

The Brake System Warning Light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your CHEVROLET retailer.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

If the light comes on while driving, a chime sounds. Pull off the road and stop. The pedal might be harder to push or go closer to the floor. It might also take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See Towing the Vehicle on page 9-65.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE LIGHT

Parking Brake Status Light

For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the parking brake status light comes on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your CHEVROLET retailer.

The parking brake status light comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system. If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your CHEVROLET retailer.

Parking Brake Warning Light

For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the parking brake warning light should come on briefly when the vehicle is in ON/RUN. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light comes on, there is a problem with a system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a CHEVROLET retailer as soon as possible. See Parking Brake on page 8-29 for more information.

APPLY FOOTBRAKE LIGHT

For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), this indicator comes on when the EPB switch is released without pressing the brake pedal. Always press the brake pedal before pressing the EPB switch to release the Electric Parking Brake.

See Parking Brake on page 8-29.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ANTILOCK BRAKE SYSTEM (ABS) WARNING LIGHT

The ABS warning light comes on briefly when the ignition key is turned to ON/RUN. This is normal. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the light does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS.

If the light stays on, turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF. If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the light still stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. If the regular brake system warning light is not on, there are still brakes, but no antilock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, there are no antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See Brake System Warning Light on page 4-20.

ALL-WHEEL-DRIVE LIGHT (AWD ONLY)

The All-Wheel-Drive Light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your CHEVROLET retailer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

This light comes on when there is a malfunction in the All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) system.

This light flashes when the AWD system is temporarily disabled.

For more information see All-Wheel Drive on page 8-26 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DESCENT CONTROL SYSTEM LIGHT*

Active and Not Ready/Warning Light

The green DCS light is DCS active indicator and the amber DCS light is DCS not ready & warning light.

DCS active indicator illuminates (as green colour) when DCS is ready for use and blinks (as green colour) while DCS is operating by pressing the DCS button located on the centre of the instrument panel.

DCS not ready & warning light works as the following :

- Blinks (as amber colour) to indicate that DCS is not ready for condition to operate due to the high temperature (about 350~400°C) of friction material (front pad) through severe or repeated braking. This light will disappear when the temperature of friction material (front pad) is lower than 350°C.
- Illuminates (as amber colour) to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system due to the high temperature (over 400°C) of friction material (Front pad) through severe or repeated braking.
- This light also will disappear when temperature of friction material (front pad) is lower than 350°C.
- The blinking and illuminating of DCS not ready & warning light notify you that the friction material needs to cool down (drive your vehicle enough without braking as much as possible). Above temperature may differ somewhat according to vehicle condition or environment (season or outer temperature) or etc. See Descent Control System (DCS) on page 8-33 for more information.

ULTRASONIC PARKING SENSOR LIGHT

This light comes on to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system.

- Fault due to sensors that are dirty
- Covered by ice or snow
- Outside ultrasonic waves interference

The source of interference is removed, the system will operate normally.

If the lamp does not go off, you have the cause of the fault in the system remedied by a CHEVROLET retailer.

See Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 8-37 for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC) INDICATOR LIGHT*

For vehicles with Electronic Stability Control (ESC), this light comes on briefly while starting the engine.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your CHEVROLET retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then turns off.

If the light comes on and stays on while driving, there could be a problem with the ESC and the vehicle might need service. When this warning light is on, the ESC is off and does not limit wheel spin.

The light flashes if the system is active and is working to assist the driver with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

See Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 8-32 for more information.

ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC) OFF LIGHT*

For vehicles with Electronic Stability Control (ESC), this light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your CHEVROLET retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

This light comes on when the ESC system is turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The system can be turned off by pressing the ESC control button located on the center of the instrument panel.

For more information, see Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 8-32.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE WARNING LIGHT

The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on briefly when the engine is started. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your CHEVROLET retailer.

This light indicates that the engine coolant has overheated.

If the light comes on and stays on while driving, the vehicle may have a problem with the cooling system. Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine to avoid damage to the engine.

See Engine Overheating on page 9-19 for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WAIT-TO-START LIGHT

The wait-to-start light illuminates when preheating is activated. When the light goes out the engine can be started.

For more information, see Starting the Diesel Engine on page 8-13.

ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LIGHT

Caution

Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.

The oil pressure light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your CHEVROLET retailer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. If the engine oil pressure warning lamp comes on while driving, pull off the road, stop the engine and check the oil level. Seek assistance from your CHEVROLET retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LOW ENGINE OIL LEVEL LIGHT

This light should come on briefly when the ignition is turned ON as a check to let you know that the light is working.

If this light comes on and stays on while the engine is running, it means your engine is low on oil. Check the oil level as soon as possible. See Engine Oil on page 9-6 for further information.

Caution

Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.

CHANGE ENGINE OIL LIGHT

This light illuminates when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds.

Your vehicle may have an engine oil life system that lets you know when to change the engine oil.

When the change engine oil light comes on, it means that the engine oil needs to be changed.

Once the engine oil has been changed, the engine oil life system must be reset. After reset, the change engine oil light will go out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

See Changing Engine Oil and Filter on page 9-8 for more information.

See Engine Oil Life System on page 9-11 for more information.

FUEL ECONOMY LIGHT* (AWD)

For vehicles with the eco (fuel economy mode light), it comes on when the eco (economy) switch, located on the center console near the shift lever, is pressed. Press the switch again to turn off the light and exit the fuel saver mode.

LOW FUEL WARNING LIGHT

This light comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. When fuel is added, the light should go off. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced.

Caution
Do not let your vehicle run out of fuel. This can damage the catalytic converter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WATER IN FUEL WARNING LIGHT

When the water level in the fuel filter exceeds a certain level, this warning light comes on. If this condition occurs, immediately drain the water from the fuel filter.

For the drain procedures, see Water in Fuel on page 8-39.

The warning light goes off when the draining is complete.

Caution

Driving when this warning indicator is on, can damage the fuel injection system and the engine. If the indicator comes on right after a refuel, it means water was pumped into the fuel tank. Turn off the engine immediately. Then, have the water drained at once.

IMMOBILIZER LIGHT

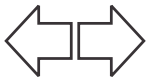
The immobilizer light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your CHEVROLET retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light turns off.

This light comes on when the ignition is turned from LOCK/OFF to ON/RUN and stays on if the vehicle is immobilized. This happens when an incorrect key or an unprogrammed key is used to start the vehicle.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See Immobilizer Operation on page 1-11 for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TURN SIGNAL LIGHTS



The control indicator flashes if a turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Fast flashing: failure of a turn signal light or associated fuse. See Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 5-4 for more information.

HIGH-BEAM ON LIGHT

The high-beam on light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use and during headlamp flash.

See Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 5-2 for more information.

FRONT FOG LAMP LIGHT

For vehicles with front fog lamps, this light comes on when the front fog lamps are in use.

The light goes out when the front fog lamps are turned off. See Front Fog Lamps on page 5-4 for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REAR FOG LAMP LIGHT

If your vehicle has rear fog lamps, this light will come on when they are in use.

For more information see Rear Fog Lamps on page 5-5.

LAMPS ON REMINDER LIGHT

The lamps on reminder light comes on when the exterior lamps are in use. See Exterior Lamp Controls on page 5-1.

CRUISE CONTROL LIGHT

The light comes on green when the cruise control is set.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See Cruise Control on page 8-34 for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DOOR AJAR LIGHT

This light comes on when a door is open or not securely latched. Before driving, check that all doors are properly closed.

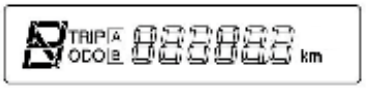
GATE AJAR LIGHT

If the gate ajar light comes on, the tailgate or the tailgate window is open or not securely latched.

Driving with the tailgate open can cause carbon monoxide (CO) to enter the vehicle.

See Engine Exhaust on page 8-18 for more information.

TRANSMISSION DISPLAY



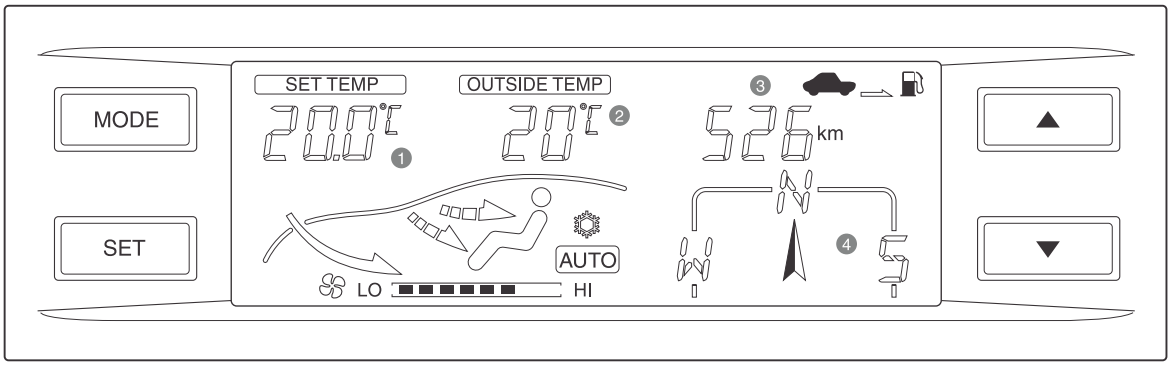
It indicates the selected gear or transmission mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INFORMATION DISPLAYS

DRIVER INFORMATION CENTRE (DIC)

The DIC is the Driver Information Centre that displays the trip computer, display panel for automatic temperature control, outside temperature and compass information when ignition switch is ON.



1. FATC (Full Automatic Temperature Control) display panel
2. Outside temperature
3. Trip computer
4. Compass

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TRIP COMPUTER

TRIP COMPUTER

Trip computer provides a driver with driving information such as driving distance for remaining fuel, average fuel consumption, average speed, and driving time.

Each time you press the MODE button, the display changes in the following order:

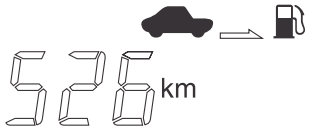
Driving distance for remaining fuel → Average speed → Driving time → Average fuel consumption → Driving distance for remaining fuel

To reset average speed or driving time or average fuel consumption, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds.

To change the distance unit, do the following:

1. Press the SET button for more than 2 seconds. The temperature unit will blink.
2. Press the SET button again. The distance unit will blink.
3. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to change the distance unit (km ⟷ mile).

Driving Distance For Remaining Fuel



This mode indicates the estimated driving distance to empty from the current fuel in the fuel tank.

When the distance to empty is less than 50 km (30 miles), --- will display.

Note

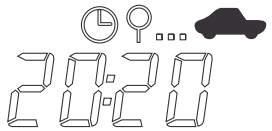
The driving distance for remaining fuel can differ from the actual distance according to driving conditions, driving pattern or vehicle speed.

Average Speed

This mode indicates the average speed. To reset the average speed to zero, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving Time

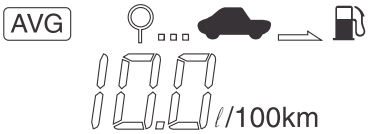


This mode indicates the total driving time.

To reset the driving time to zero, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds.

The driving time will be initialized to 0:00 after being displayed to 99:59.

Average Fuel Consumption



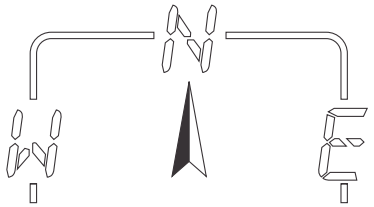
This mode indicates the vehicle's average fuel consumption.

Note

- Average fuel consumption is reset to 10.0 if the battery is disconnected.
- To reset the average fuel consumption to zero, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds.
- The average fuel consumption can differ from the actual average fuel consumption according to driving conditions.
- The average fuel consumption can vary according to the driving conditions, driving pattern or vehicle speed.

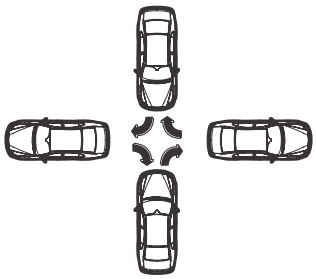
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass



This displays the vehicle's driving direction to 8–direction (N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W, NW).

Compass Calibration



Whenever the DIC or the battery is disconnected, the DIC must be recalibrated.

To do this, the vehicle must be driven through 360°. Until calibrated the compass will not function correctly.

1. If you press the MODE and SET button simultaneously for more than 2 seconds, the compass display flashes.
2. Turn the vehicle around 1 complete circle within 90 seconds slowly, then the calibration will be accomplished.
3. When the calibration is finished, the compass display does not flash anymore. You can turn around to any direction, left or right.

   If enough space is not available to turn around 1 circle, turn the vehicle around as shown in the figure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Release conditions for the compass calibration

- Press the SET button twice continuously.
- When the vehicle is not turned within 90 seconds after calibration mode started.

Note

The direction will be displayed while driving.

If the compass display continues to flash, turn around again slowly until it goes off.

Note

In the compass calibration mode, press the SET button to move to deflection calibration mode. At that time, press ▼ or ▲ button to adjust deflection calibration value.

Caution
If there are mobile telephones or magnetic bodies around the DIC, the compass may not be operated properly.

FATC Display Panel / Outside Temperature

See Automatic Climate Control on page 7-1.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LIGHTING

Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 5-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder... 5-2
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 5-2
Flash-to-Pass 5-3
Headlamp Range Adjustment .. 5-3
Hazard Warning Flashers 5-3
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 5-4
Front Fog Lamps 5-4
Rear Fog Lamps 5-5
Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 5-6
Dome Lamps 5-6
Reading Lamps.....5-7
Lighting Features
Entry Lighting 5-7
Front Door Step Lamps 5-8
Battery Power Protection 5-8

EXTERIOR LIGHTING

EXTERIOR LAMP CONTROLS

The turn signal / multifunction lever located on the side of the steering column operates the exterior lamps.

To turn the head, tail and parking lamps on or off, twist the end of the combination switch lever.

The light switch has three positions which activate various lamp functions as follows:

OFF : Turns all the lamps off.

(Parking Lamps): Turns on the parking lamps, together with the following:

- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamp
- Instrument Panel Lights

(Headlamps): Turns on the low-beam headlamps, together with the following:

- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamp
- Instrument Panel Lights
- Parking Lamps

Caution
If you open a driver's door or when you press UNLOCK button on the remote keyless entry transmitter, instrument panel lamps will come on automatically and stay on for about 30 seconds.

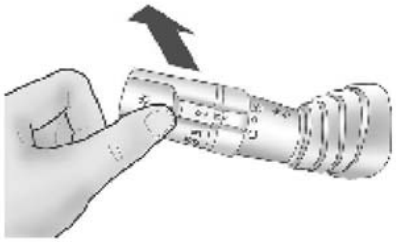
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXTERIOR LAMPS OFF REMINDER

A warning chime sounds, if the driver door is opened while the ignition is OFF and the exterior lamps control is in the or position.

If the lamps are turned off while the warning is chiming and then turned back the lamps on, you will not hear a warning chime.

HEADLAMP HIGH / LOW-BEAM CHANGER



To turn the high-beam headlamps on, make sure the low-beam headlamps are on.

Push the turn signal/lane change lever away from you and release, to turn the high beams on. To return to low beams, pull the lever towards you and release.

This indicator light turns on in the instrument panel cluster when the high-beam headlamps are on.

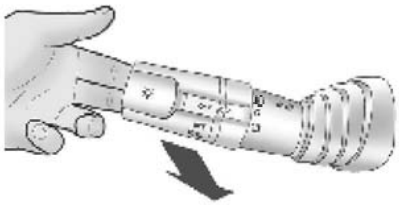
Caution

Always switch the high-beam headlamps to low-beam when you approach on coming vehicles or when other vehicles are ahead.

High-beam headlamps can temporarily blind other drivers, which could result in a collision.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FLASH-TO-PASS



The flash-to-pass feature works with the low beams on or off.

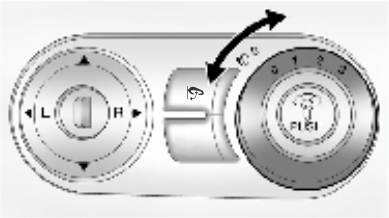
To flash the high beams, pull the turn signal/lane change lever all the way towards you, then release it.

The lever will return to its normal position when you release it.

The high beam headlamps will stay on as long as you hold the turn signal/lane change lever towards you.

HEADLAMP RANGE ADJUSTMENT

Manual Headlamp Range Adjustment



For vehicles with manual headlamp leveling, the manual headlamp range control is located next to the steering column. This feature lets the headlamp range be adjusted to suit the vehicle load to prevent dazzling.

The low-beam headlamps must be on to adjust the headlamp range.

0 = Front seats occupied.
1 = All seats occupied.
2 = All seats occupied and load in the luggage compartment.
3 = Driver's seat occupied and load in the luggage compartment.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

The hazard warning flasher button is located on the instrument panel.

⚠ Hazard Warning Flasher:

Operated with the ⚠ button.

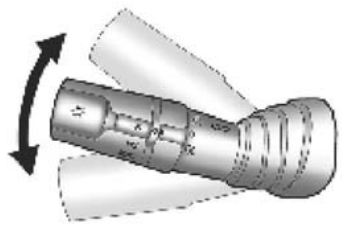
To activate the hazard warning flashers, push the button.

To turn off the flashers, push the button again.

The hazard warning button will be lit, when a door is opened. If the key is removed from the ignition and a door is opened and closed, the hazard warning button will light up for about 10 minutes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TURN AND LANE-CHANGE SIGNALS



Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

- Push the lever down for left turn

- Push the lever up for right turn

An arrow on the instrument panel cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

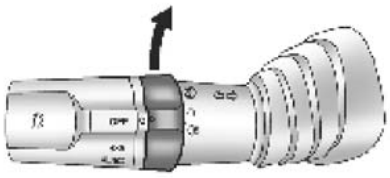
The lever returns to its starting position when the turn is completed.

For three flashes, e.g. when changing lanes, move the lever until resistance is felt and then release.

Move the lever to the resistance point and hold for longer indication.

Switch the indicator off manually by moving the lever to its original position.

FRONT FOG LAMPS



The front fog lamps are controlled by the band located on the middle of the turn signal/multifunction lever.

To use the front fog lamps, the low-beam headlamps or parking lamps must be on.

Fog lamps provide :

Extra illumination to the sides of the road ahead.

Improved visibility in fog or snow.

Turn the band to to turn the front fog lamps on. The band automatically

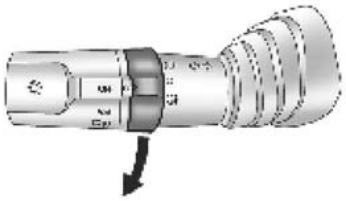
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

returns to its starting position when released. The front fog lamp indicator light comes on in the instrument panel cluster.

To turn the front fog lamps off, turn the band to ⇶ again. The fog lamp indicator light will go off.

The parking lamps and low-beam headlamps come on when turning on the front fog lamps.

REAR FOG LAMPS



For vehicles with rear fog lamps, they are controlled by the ⇶ band located on the middle of the turn signal/multifunction lever.

To use the rear fog lamps, the low-beam headlamps or parking lamps must be on.

Turn the band to ⇶ to turn the rear fog lamps on. The band automatically returns to its starting position when released. The rear fog lamp indicator light comes on in the instrument panel cluster.

To turn the rear fog lamps off, turn the band to ⇶ again. The rear fog lamp indicator light will go off.

The parking lamps and low-beam headlamps come on when turning on the rear fog lamps.

Reversing Lamps

The reversing lamps come on when the ignition is ON and reverse gear is selected.

Misted Lamp Covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself; to help switch on the headlights.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INTERIOR LIGHTING

INSTRUMENT PANEL ILLUMINATION CONTROL

This feature controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights.

To dim the panel illumination, push the button and turn it clockwise.

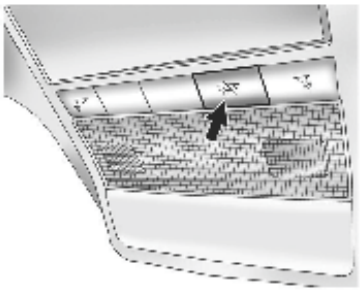
To brighten the illumination, push the button and turn it counterclockwise.

DOME LAMPS

Press the button on the dome lamp to turn it on or off.

The dome lamps come on when a door or the tailgate is opened. If you continue to open a door or tailgate, the lamps will stay on for about 10 minutes. If all doors and tailgate are closed, the lamps dim gradually after about 10 seconds instead of immediately turning off.

Dome Lamp Override



(Dome Lamp Override): Press to keep the dome lamps and other interior lamps turned off while any door is open. Press again to return it to the out position and the lamps automatically come on when any door is opened.

Note

The battery can be discharged if the lights keep turning on for a long time.

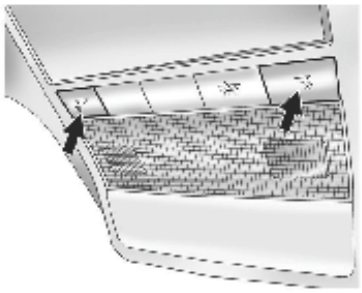
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Avoid using the courtesy light while driving in the dark.

A lit passenger compartment reduces visibility in the dark, and could cause a collision.

READING LAMPS



: Press the button near each lamp to turn the reading lamps on or off.

LIGHTING FEATURES

ENTRY LIGHTING

Welcome Lighting

Some lights are switched on for a short time when unlocking the vehicle with the remote control. This function facilitates locating the vehicle when it is dark.

The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is turned to the accessory position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FRONT DOOR STEP LAMPS

Front door step lamps on when you open a door. If you continue to open a door, the lamps will stay on for about 10 minutes. If all doors are closed, the lamp stays on for about 10 seconds and then goes out.

Front door step lamps can be immediately turned off by pushing the button located on the headliner. See Dome Lamp Override function on page 5-6.

BATTERY POWER PROTECTION

Your vehicle has a feature to help, prevent you from draining the battery in case you accidentally leave on the lamps like headlamps, parking lamps, fog lamps, etc.

If you leave any of these lamps on, they will automatically turn off after 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to the OFF position.

Battery rundown protection will not operate when you turn the lamps on again, 10 minutes after this feature operated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM

Introduction
Infotainment 6-1
Overview (Radio with CD and RDS) 6-2
Operation 6-3
Radio
AM-FM Radio 6-4
RDS Operation 6-5
Radio Reception 6-5
Backglass Antenna 6-6
Audio Players
CD Player 6-6
MP3 6-9
Auxiliary Devices 6-12
Phone
Bluetooth 6-12

INTRODUCTION

INFOTAINMENT

Before using the device for the first time, please read the following pages to become familiar with its features.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for extended periods could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to you or others. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving.

This system provides access to many audio and non audio listings.

To minimize taking your eyes off the road while driving, do the following while the vehicle is parked:

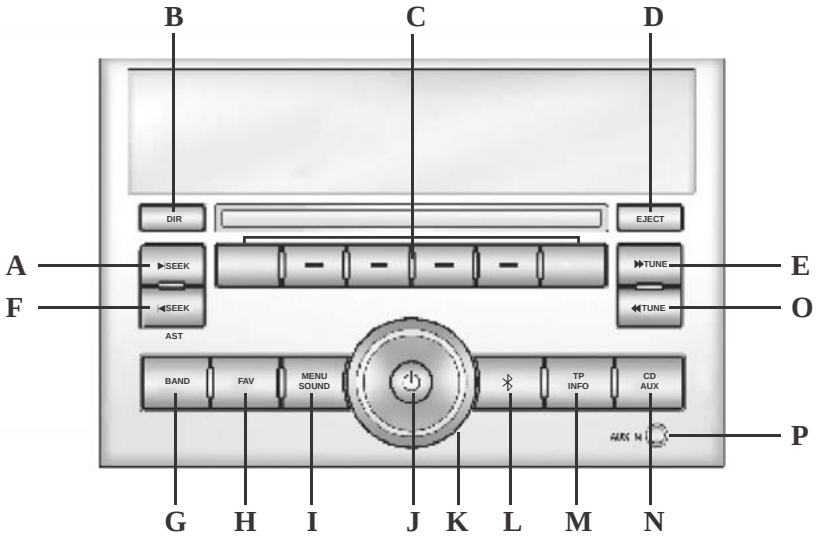
- Become familiar with the operation and controls of the audio system.
- Set up the tone, speaker adjustments, and preset radio stations.

Caution

Contact your CHEVROLET retailer before adding any equipment. Adding audio or communication equipment could interfere with the operation of the engine, radio, or other systems, and could damage them. Follow federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone equipment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OVERVIEW (RADIO WITH CD AND RDS)



A. ▶| SEEK

- Radio: Press to go to the next available radio station.
- CD: Press to go to the next folder.

B. DIR

- Press to repeat the tracks in the current directory.

C. Buttons 1-6

- Press to select a preset station.
- Press to select a screen softkey option.

D. EJECT

- Press to eject CD.

E. ▶▶ TUNE

- Radio: Press to manually select the next radio station.
- CD: Press to go to the next track.
- CD: Press and hold to fast search forward through the current track.

F. |◀ SEEK/AST (Automatic store)

- Radio: Press to go to the previous available radio station.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- CD: Press to go to the previous folder.
- AST: Press and hold to access the Autostore menu.

G. BAND

- Press to select between AM and FM.

H. FAV (Favorites)

- Press to select favorites page.

I. MENU/SOUND

- Press to go to the tone menu.

J. ⏻ (Power)

- Press to turn on or mute the system.
- Press and hold to turn off.

K. ⏻ (Volume)

- Turn to adjust the volume.

L. ᛒ (Bluetooth)

- Press to access the Bluetooth menu.

M. TP / INFO
(Traffic Program/ Information)

- TP: Press to access the traffic program menu.
- INFO: Press and hold to display radio station information or track information.

N. CD/AUX

- Press to choose between CD and auxiliary device.

O. ◀◀ TUNE

- Radio: Press to manually select the previous radio station.
- CD : Press to go to previous track.
- CD: Press and hold to fast search backward through the current track.

P. Auxiliary input jack.

OPERATION

POWER ON/OFF

⏻ (Power):

- Press to turn on the radio.
- Press to mute the radio while the power is on. Press again to cancel mute.
- Press and hold to turn the radio off.
- Turn to adjust the volume.

AUDIO ADJUSTMENT

Bass Tone Adjustment

1. Press and hold the MENU/ SOUND button; the audio menu displays.
2. Press the softkey under “Bass” and turn the ⏻ knob to adjust.

Midrange Tone Adjustment

1. Press and hold the MENU/ SOUND button; the audio menu displays.
2. Press the softkey under “Mid” and turn the ⏻ knob to adjust.

Treble Tone Adjustment

1. Press and hold the MENU/ SOUND button; the audio menu displays.
2. Press the softkey under “Treb” and turn the ⏻ knob to adjust.

Balance Control

1. Press and hold the MENU/ SOUND

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

button; the audio menu displays.

2. Press the softkey under “Bal” and turn the ⏻ knob to adjust.

Fader Control

1. Press and hold the MENU/ SOUND button; the audio menu displays.
2. Press the softkey under “Fad” and turn the ⏻ knob to adjust.

Preset EQ Selection

1. Press and hold MENU/ SOUND button; the audio menu displays.
2. Press the softkey under “P EQ”, then the preset EQ menu displays.
3. Press the softkey under the preset EQ mode you want.

   To cancel the selected preset EQ, press the softkey under “P EQ”once more with the same procedure.

   The preset EQ modes are POP, Rock, Country, Voice, Jazz, and Classic.

RADIO

AM-FM RADIO

Radio Mode Selection

Press the BAND button to listen the radio from other mode.

Band Selection

Press the BAND button to change from AM to FM or FM to AM.

Manual Tune

Press ◀◀ TUNE or ▶▶TUNE to manually change the frequency down or up.

If this button is pressed continuously, the frequency increases or decreases continuously.

Seek

Press ▶| SEEK to find the next station automatically.

Press |◀SEEK to find previous station automatically.

Saving Favorite Stations

It has 6 favorite pages and can store up to 36 stations regardless of AM or FM band.

To save stations as favorites:

1. Seek the station or tune button manually.
2. Select the favorite page by pressing the FAV button.
3. Press and hold the softkey to store the station in that position.

Recall Favorite Stations

Listen to the station stored in the favorite preset by using the following procedure:

1. Select the favorite page by pressing FAV.
2. Press the softkey under the favorite preset number.

AST (AUTOSTORE)

1. Press and hold the |◀ SEEK/AST button, then auto store menu displays.
2. Press the softkey under “On.” The radio will start autostore operation and store 12 stations automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Delete Autostore Page

1. Press and hold the |◀ SEEK/AST button, then auto store menu displays.
2. Press the softkey under "Off" to delete the autostore page.

RDS OPERATION (RADIO WITH CD AND RDS)

AF (Audio Frequency)

AF function enables the radio to track the best station at all times.

To turn AF on or off:

1. Press the MENU/SOUND button, and then the radio menu displays.
2. Press the softkey under "RDS," and then the RDS menu displays.
3. Press the softkey under "AF."

   AF is turned on or off whenever you press this softkey.

Regional

Regional function enables the radio to jump to regional stations (Regional off).

To turn Regional on or off:

1. Press the MENU/SOUND button, and then the radio menu displays.
2. Press the softkey under "RDS," and then the RDS menu displays.
3. Press the softkey under "REG." Regional is turned on or off whenever you press this softkey.

Traffic Announcement

Press the TP/INFO button to listen to traffic announcements if they are available. Press TP/INFO again to cancel.

Traffic Station Seek

If traffic announcements are not available on the station currently playing, press the TP/INFO button and the radio searches for the next available traffic announcement station.

RADIO RECEPTION

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as cell phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. For better radio reception, most AM radio stations boost the power levels during the day, and then reduce these levels during the night. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on your radio.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FM Stereo

FM stereo gives the best sound, but FM signals reach only about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 miles). Tall buildings or hills can interfere with FM signals, causing the sound to fade in and out.

Cellular Phone Usage

Cellular phone usage may cause interference with the vehicle's radio. This interference may occur when making or receiving phone calls, charging the phone's battery, or simply having the phone on. This interference causes an increased level of static while listening to the radio. If static is received while listening to the radio, unplug the cellular phone and turn it off.

BACKGLASS ANTENNA

Your antenna is located in the rear side window and tailgate window. Be sure that the inside surface of the window is not scratched and that the lines on the window are not damaged. If the inside surface is damaged, it could interfere with radio reception.

Caution

Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window can damage the rear window antenna and/or the rear window defogger. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not clear the inside rear window with sharp objects.

Caution

Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting with metallic film.The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception. Any damage caused to the backglass antenna due to metallic tinting materials will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

AUDIO PLAYERS

CD PLAYER

Playing a CD

As each CD is inserted, the radio will appear on the display and as each CD is loading, File check will appear on the display.

Once playback begins, the track and track number will appear on the display.

If the ignition or radio is turned OFF with a CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When a CD is in the player and the ignition is turned ON, the radio must be turned ON before the current CD will start playback. When the ignition and radio are turned ON, the CD will start playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

The CD player can play the smaller 8 cm (3 in) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, the CD will need to be cleaned.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

Do not add any label to a CD; it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen instead.

Caution

If a label is added to a CD, more than one CD is inserted into the slot at a time, or an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs, the CD player could be damaged. While using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.

If an error appears on the display, see "CD Messages" later in this section.

Care of CDs

Sound quality can be reduced due to disc quality, recording method, quality of the music recorded, and how the disc has been handled. Handle discs carefully and store them in their original cases or other protective cases away from direct sunlight and dust. If the bottom surface of a disc is damaged, the disc may not play properly or at all.

Do not touch the bottom surface of a disc while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up discs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

If the bottom surface of a disc is dirty, take a soft lint-free cloth, or dampen a clean soft cloth in a mild neutral detergent solution mixed with water, and clean it. Wipe the disc from the center to the outer edge.

CD Playback Mode Selection

Press the CD/AUX button to play back the disc from another mode.

CD Load

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in and the CD should begin playing.

CD Eject

Press the EJECT button, then the disc will be ejected from the tray from the radio. Pull the disc out of the tray.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pause

Press the CD/AUX button to pause playback while a CD is playing back.

"PAUSE" will flash on the display.

Press CD/AUX again to start playing the CD.

If the radio is connected with an AUX unit, then the pause function is disabled.

Next/Previous Track

Press ▶| TUNE or |◀ TUNE to start playback of the next or previous track.

Fast Forward/Fast Reverse

Press and hold ▶|TUNE or |◀TUNE to fast forward or fast reverse the current track.

RPT (Repeat)

1. Press the MENU/SOUND button and the radio shows additional functions for disc playback.
2. Press the softkey under RPT and the current track is repeated.

To cancel this function, press the softkey under RPT again.

RDM (Random)

1. Press the MENU/SOUND button and the radio shows additional functions for disc playback.
2. Press the softkey under RDM and tracks play randomly.

To cancel this function, press the softkey under RDM again.

INT (Scan)

1. Press the MENU/SOUND button and the radio shows additional functions for disc playback.
2. Press the softkey under INT and the radio plays back the first few seconds of all tracks sequentially.

To cancel this function, press the softkey under INT again.

CD Messages

CHECK CD: If this message appears on the display and/or the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- The format of the CD is not compatible. See "MP3 Format" later in this section.
- There was a problem while burning the CD.
- The label is caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD. If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your CHEVROLET retailer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your CHEVROLET retailer when reporting the problem.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MP3

MP3/WMA Format

If you burn your own MP3/WMA disc on a personal computer:

- Make sure the MP3/WMA files are recorded on a CD-R disc.
- Do not mix standard audio and MP3/ WMA files on one disc.
- Make sure each MP3/WMA file has a .mp3 or .wma extension; other file extensions may not work.
- Files can be recorded with a variety of fixed or variable bit rates. Song title, artist name, and album will be available for display by the radio when recorded using ID3 tags version 1 and 2.
- Create a folder structure that makes it easy to find songs while driving. Organize songs by albums using one folder for each album. Each folder or album should contain 18 songs or less.
- Make sure to finalize the disc when burning an MP3/WMA disc, using multiple sessions. It is usually better to burn the disc all at once.

The player will be able to read and play a maximum of 50 folders, five sessions, and 999 files. Long file names and folder names may use more disc memory space than necessary. To conserve space on the disc, minimize the length of the file and folder names. You can also play an MP3/WMA CD that was recorded using no file folders. The system can support up to eight folders in depth, but keep the depth of the folders to a minimum in order to keep down the complexity and confusion in trying to locate a particular folder during playback. If a CD contains more than the maximum of 50 folders, five sessions, and 999 files, the player will let you access and navigate up to the maximum, but all items over the maximum will be ignored.

Root Directory

The root directory will be treated as a folder. If the root directory has compressed audio files, the directory will be displayed as ROOT. All files contained directly under the root directory will be accessed prior to any other directory.

Empty Directory or Folder

If a root directory or a folder exists somewhere in the file structure that contains only folders/subfolders and no compressed files directly beneath them, the player will advance to the next folder in the file structure that contains compressed audio files and the empty folder will not be displayed or numbered.

No Folder

When the CD contains only compressed files, the files will be located under the root folder. The next and previous folder functions will have no function on a CD that was recorded without folders. When displaying the name of the folder the radio will display ROOT.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the CD contains only compressed audio files, but no folders, all files will be located under the root folder. When the radio displays the name of the folder, the radio will display ROOT.

Order of Play

Tracks will be played in the following order:

1. Playback will begin from the first track under the root directory.
2. When all tracks from the root directory have been played, playback will continue from files, according to their numerical listing.
3. After playing the last track from the last folder, the player will begin playing again at the first track of the first folder or root directory.

File System and Naming

The song name in the ID3 tag will be displayed. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio will display the file name without the extension (such as Mp3/WMA) instead.

Track names longer than 32 characters or four pages will be shortened. The display will not show parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the file name will not be displayed.

Playing an MP3/WMA

With the ignition ON, insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in. Loading, then Filecheck, and then MP3 or WMA will appear on the display. The CD should begin playing. You cannot insert a CD with the ACC OFF.

As each new track starts to play, the track number and the song name will appear on the display.

If the ignition or radio is turned OFF with a CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When a CD is in the player and the ignition is turned ON, the radio must be turned ON before the CD will start playback. When the ignition and radio are turned ON, the CD will start playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

The CD player can play the smaller 8 cm (3 in) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, see “Care of CDs” for more information.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Do not add any label to a CD; it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen instead.

Caution
If a label is added to a CD, more than one CD is inserted into the slot at a time, or an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs, the CD player could be damaged. While using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.

Care of CDs

Sound quality can be reduced due to disc quality, recording method, quality of the music recorded, and how the disc has been handled. Handle discs carefully and store them in their original cases or other protective cases away from direct sunlight and dust. If the bottom surface of a disc is damaged, the disc may not play properly or at all. Do not touch the bottom surface of a disc while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up discs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

If the bottom surface of a disc is dirty, take a soft lint-free cloth, or dampen a clean soft cloth in a mild neutral detergent solution mixed with water, and clean it. Wipe the disc from the center to the outer edge.

All of the CD functions work the same while playing an MP3/WMA, except for those listed here. See CD Player on page 6-6 for more information.

All/Directory Mode

Repeat, intro-scan, random function operates in the current folder when All mode is active.

Press the softkey under “ALL” and it changes to “DIR.” To cancel DIR mode, press the softkey again.

DIR (Directory): Press to repeat the tracks in the current directory. DIR will appear on the display. Press again to repeat the tracks in all of the directories. ALL will appear on the display.

Press again to turn off repeat play.

▶| SEEK |◀ SEEK (Next Folder / Previous) (in MP3/WMA mode):

Press ▶| SEEK |◀ SEEK to change the folder. If the CD-R does not have a folder, ROOT will flash on the display for a short time.

▶▶ TUNE ◀◀ TUNE (Next Track/ Previous): Press ◀◀ TUNE to go to the start of the current track or press ▶▶ TUNE to go to the next track. The track number will appear on the display. The player will continue moving backward or forward through the CD with each press of the ▶▶ TUNE ◀◀ TUNE.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TP/INFO (Information): Press to display additional text information related to the current MP3/WMA song. There is a choice of additional information such as Song Title, Album Title, and Artist. Bit rate may also appear on display.

When information is not available, No info will appear on the display.

Press this button for longer than two seconds to change display mode.

Press to display the ID3 tag information of the current files.

AUXILIARY DEVICES

The radio has one auxiliary input jack (diameter 3.5 mm) located on the lower right side of the faceplate. This is not an audio output; do not plug the headphone set into the front auxiliary input jack. You can, however, connect an external audio device such as an iPod, laptop computer, MP3 player, or CD changer to the auxiliary input jack for use as another source for audio listening.

AUX In Mode Selection

Press the CD/AUX button in the other playback mode.

If the auxiliary jack doesn't detect the presence of an output jack, the aux mode will be prevented from coming up.

PHONE

BLUETOOTH

General Information

Vehicles with Bluetooth® provide the possibility of holding conversations via a vehicle microphone and the vehicle loudspeakers, as well as operating the most important functions via the infotainment system.

Not all mobile phone functions are supported by every mobile phone. The phone functions available depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. For further information, see the cell phone manufatrurer's user guide or contact your network provider.

Bluetooth®

For security reasons, at least a four-digit and randomly selected Personal Identification Number (PIN) code should be used to pair devices.

Operation

Bluetooth can be operated via a steering wheel remote control system or a multifunction knob on the radio.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

As soon as the mobile telephone has been switched on and the mobile telephone is logged in, the start page appears on the display.

Steering Wheel Controls

/ (Mute/Power): Press to turn on the system. Press to mute audio while the radio is on. Press and hold to turn off radio.

/ / (Push to Talk / Bluetooth / End Call): Press once to answer or make a call. Press to access the Bluetooth menu. Press twice to dial a call. Press and hold to cancel, decline, or hang up a call.

SEEK: Press to go to the next preset radio station. Press and hold to search for the next station.

MODE: Press to toggle through radio modes as follows: FM - AM -CD - AUX - FM.

+ : Press to increase volume.

–: Press to decrease volume.

Telephone Connection

A connection can be created between a mobile telephone and the infotainment system via a Bluetooth® connection as long as your mobile telephone and the mobile telephone portal support this function.

For information on the Bluetooth function for your mobile telephone, see the operating instructions for the mobile telephone.

Bluetooth® Connection

The Bluetooth function on the mobile telephone must be activated. See the operating instructions for the mobile telephone.

Bluetooth is a radio standard for wireless connection of a mobile telephone to other equipment. Information such as the phonebook, call list, network operator, and field intensity can be transmitted. Depending on the type of equipment, the functions may be restricted.

Creating a Connection

1. Press .
2. Press the softkey button below PAIRING.
3. Search and select the device name “CAR AUDIO” on the phone.

The name of the device will display for three seconds. “Mode Selection” will display. When device is connected, “BT” will now display. Once a device is paired, the radio will use an auto connection feature and try to connect to the last device paired when turned on.

Making a Call

To dial the last number called using the Bluetooth system:

1. Press .
2. Press the softkey below CALL.
3. To redial the last call placed, press the softkey below LAST CALL. The radio will display “Dialing.”

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To dial a call using the Bluetooth system:

1. Press ✱ .
2. Press the softkey below CALL.
3. To place a new call, dial the phone number or search the mobile phone address book. The radio will display "Dialing."

During a Call

There are three audio options on the radio display:

- Press the softkey below MIC MUTE to mute the phone call.
- Press the softkey below PRIVATE or ⏻ to allow the call to be heard from the mobile phone and not the audio system.
- Press the softkey below HANG UP to end the call.

Incoming Calls

When there is an incoming call, the radio will display INCOMING CALL for three seconds. The phone number will display until the softkey below ANSWER or DECLINE is pressed.

- To answer an incoming call, press the softkey below ANSWER.
- To decline an incoming call, press the softkey below DECLINE.

Bluetooth Music Controls

The infotainment system can connect to Bluetooth devices to play music through the audio system.

To play music through an audio device:

1. Connect to the Bluetooth device. See "Creating a Connection" earlier in this section for help connecting the device.
2. In the Mode Selection menu, press the softkey belowAUDIO PLAY.
3. Press the softkey below the desired option to PLAY, PAUSE, TRACK UP, or TRACK DOWN.
4. To change folders, press SEEK.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CLIMATE CONTROLS

Climate Control Systems
Automatic Climate Control 7-1
Automatic Temperature Control 7-2
Manual Control 7-3
Outside Temperature Display ...7-6
Rear Window and Outside Mirror Defogger 7-7
Sunlight Sensor 7-7
Temperature Sensor 7-8
Rear Air Conditioning System ..7-8
Auxiliary Heater 7-9
Air Vents
Adjustable Air Vents 7-9
Fixed Air Vents.....7-11
Maintenance
Air Intake 7-11
Passenger Compartment A/C Filter 7-11
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 7-13

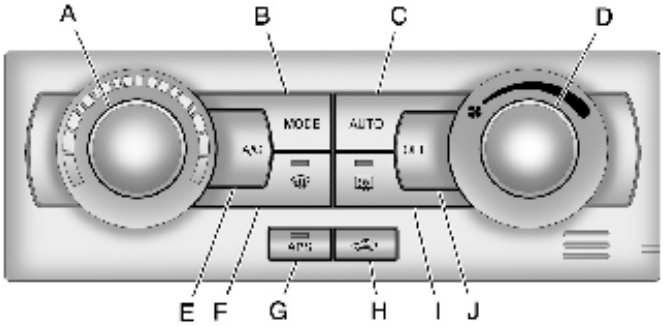
CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEMS

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

General Description

Full Automatic Temperature Control (FATC) System controls the interior temperature in your vehicle automatically and provides the greatest amount of comfort in the interior regardless of the weather, outside temperature or season. It will achieve the desired temperature when you select the AUTO mode.

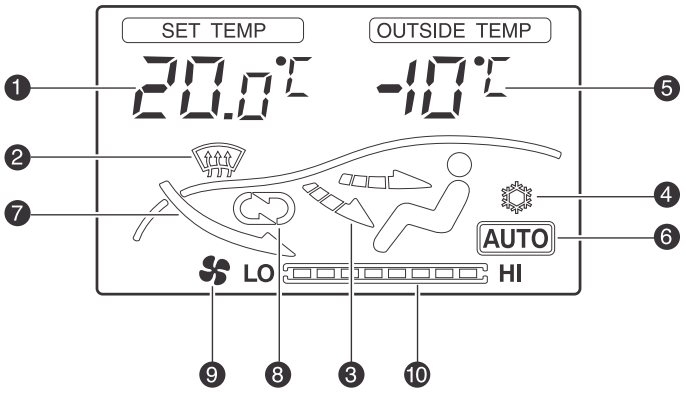
The desired temperature is controlled by an in-car sensor signal, coolant temperature, sunlight sensor signal and the ambient temperature sensor signal.



A. Temperature Control
B. MODE (Air Distribution Mode Control)
C. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
D. Fan Speed Control
E. A/C (Air Conditioning)
F. Defrost
G. APS (Anti-Pollution Sensor)
H. Recirculation
I. Rear Window Defoger
J. Off

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

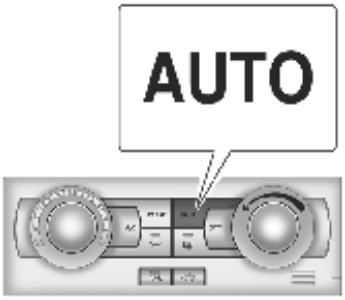
AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL



1. Set Temperature
2. Deforster Indicator
3. Air Distribution Mode Indicator
4. Air Conditioning Indicator
5. Outside Temperature
6. Auto Mode Indicator
7. Outside Air Mode Indicator
8. Recirculation Mode Indicator
9. Fan Operation Indicator
10. Fan Speed Indicator

AUTO Button

When you operate your FATC in AUTO mode, the only thing you have to do is just set the desired temperature to your preference.

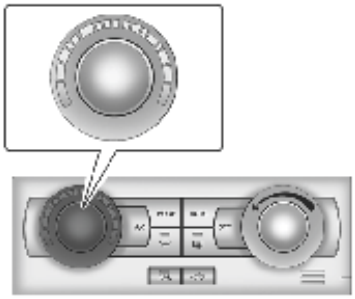


When the AUTO button is pressed, the interior temperature will be controlled automatically to reach the desired preset temperature. The system will control air distribution mode, fan speed, air conditioning and recirculation functions automatically.

AUTO mode indicator will appear in the DIC (Driver Information Centre) located in the centre of the instrument panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To Set the Desired Temperature



Rotate the temperature control knob until the desired temperature is displayed.

Clockwise : The desired temperature will increase by 0.5°C (1°F).

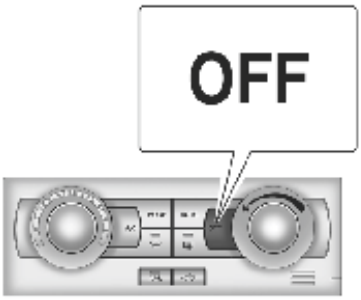
Counterclockwise : The desired temperature will decrease by 0.5°C (1°F).

You can set the desired temperature at your preference between 18°C and 32°C.

Note

When desired temperature is set at either "HI" (maximum) or "LO" (minimum), the fan operates continuously at highest speed even after the interior temperature reaches the preset temperature.

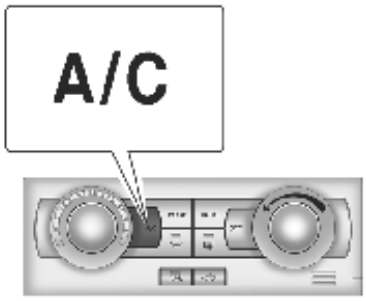
OFF Button



To turn off the entire system, press the OFF button.

MANUAL CONTROL

A/C Button



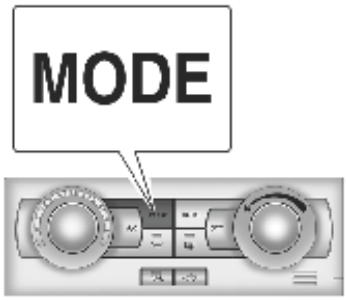
Turns the air conditioning on or off. AUTO mode is cancelled and indicator will go off when this button is pressed.

The A/C indicator (❄) will illuminate when the air conditioning is on.

Press the A/C button again to turn the A/C off, or press the OFF button to turn the entire system off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Air Distribution Mode Change



If the MODE button is pressed, AUTO mode is cancelled and the air distribution mode will be changed in the following sequence.

FRONT( ) → BI-LEVEL( ) →
FLOOR( )→FLOOR/DEFROST( )

Front

This setting directs air through centre and side vents.

Bi-level

Directs air in two ways. Half of the air through the floor vents and the remaining through the centre and side vents.

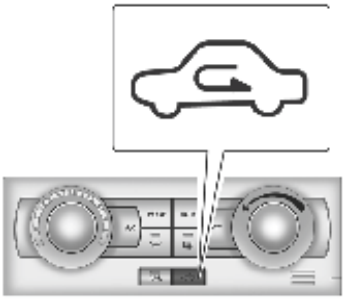
Floor

Directs most of the air through the floor vents. Some of the air will also be directed to the windscreen defroster vents, side vents, and rear vents. Keep the area under front seat clear in order not to block the airflow to the rear compartment.

Floor/Defrost

This mode directs most of the air through windscreen defroster vents, front door window defroster vents and the floor vents. A small amount of air is also directed to the side vents.

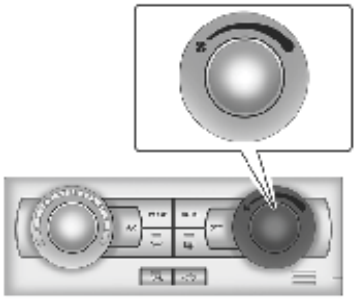
Recirculation Mode Button



Selects either outside air or recirculated inside air.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

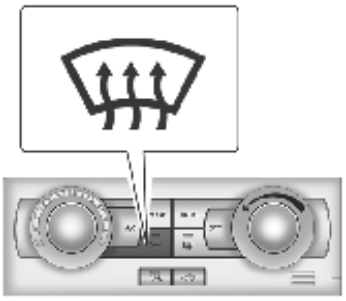
Fan Speed Control Knob



Adjust the fan speed by rotating this knob.

AUTO mode is cancelled when this knob is rotated.

Defrosting

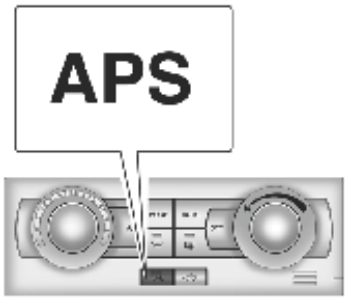


Press the DEFROST button ( ) to defrost the windscreen. The outside air mode is automatically turned on.

Adjust the fan speed using fan speed control knob.

This mode can be cancelled by pressing the defrost button again, air distribution mode knob or AUTO button.

APS



APS (Anti-Pollution Sensor) automatically draws outside air into the passenger compartment or converts air mode into recirculation mode to cut off the exhaust gas from the outside and prevent contaminating air within the passenger compartment.

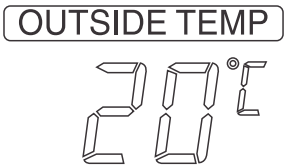
Press the APS button to activate APS mode. The indicator light on the button will come on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To turn off the APS mode, press the button again. The indicator light will go off to confirm the APS is not activated.

Your windows may fog if you use the APS mode for extended periods. If this happens, turn off the APS mode and turn to the outside air mode.

OUTSIDE TEMPERATURE DISPLAY



The outside temperature is always displayed in the DIC.

The temperature sensor is located in the front bumper area.

Due to its location, the displayed temperature can be affected by road or engine heat while slow driving or idling.

Temperature Unit Change

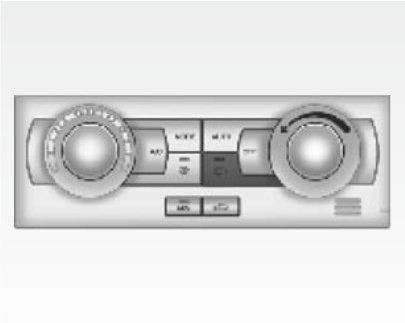
To change the temperature unit, do the followings:

1. Press SET button on the driver information centre for more than 2 seconds. The temperature unit will blink.
2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to change the temperature unit (°C↔°F).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REAR WINDOW AND OUTSIDE MIRROR DEFOGGER

For vehicles with a rear window and outside mirror defogger, they only work when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN.



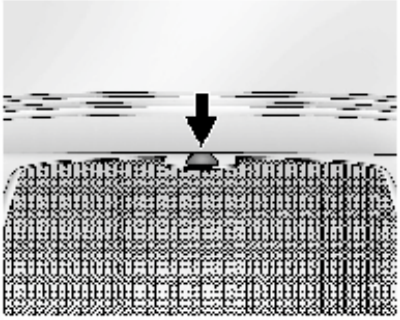
(Rear Window Defogger): Press to turn the rear window and outside mirror defogger on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the feature is on.

The rear window defogger turns off automatically within 15 minutes. It can also be turned off by pressing again.

Caution

Do not use anything sharp on the inside of the rear window. If you do, you could cut or damage the warming grid, and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not attach a temporary vehicle license, tape, a decal, or anything similar to the defogger grid.

SUNLIGHT SENSOR



The sunlight sensor located on top of the instrument panel near the windshield monitors the solar heat.

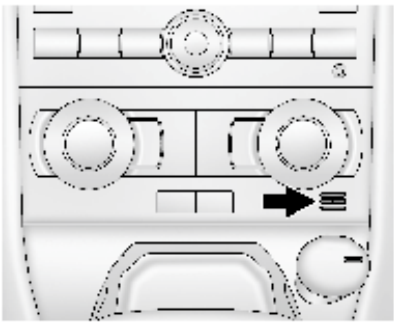
This sensor detects sunlight when operating in AUTO mode.

Caution

Do not place stickers or other items over the sensor. Doing so could cause the sensor to malfunction.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TEMPERATURE SENSOR



The temperature sensor is located on the right side of the climate control faceplate.

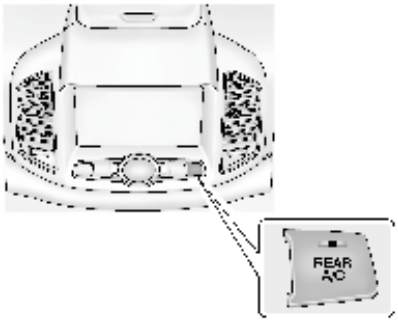
The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air distribution mode for best comfort.

Do not cover the sensors or the automatic climate control system will not work properly.

Caution
Do not place stickers over the temperature sensor as this will impair its function.

REAR AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

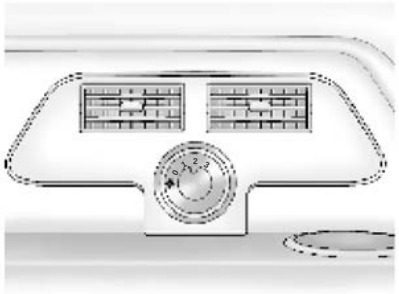
3rd Row Air Conditioning



To turn on the 3rd row air conditioning control system, press the 3rd row air conditioning ON/OFF button located on the centre of the instrument panel.

Indicator light on the ON/OFF button will illuminate.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



(Fan Control): Set the fan speed to the desired speed with the 3rd row fan speed switch.

You can also control the direction of airflow through adjustable vents.

To turn off the 3rd row air conditioning control system, press the 3rd row air conditioning ON/OFF button once more on the centre of the instrument panel (indicator light on the ON/OFF button is not illuminated) or set the fan speed to the "0" position with the 3rd row fan speed switch.

AUXILIARY HEATER

This supplementary heater is an electrical air heating type and installed in the air conditioner module. This device improves the heating effect by increasing the temperature of flowing air into the passenger compartment.

AIR VENTS

ADJUSTABLE AIR VENTS

Move the sliding knob on the air outlets up and down or left and right to direct the airflow. Use the thumbwheels near the air outlets to open or close off the airflow.

Operation Tips

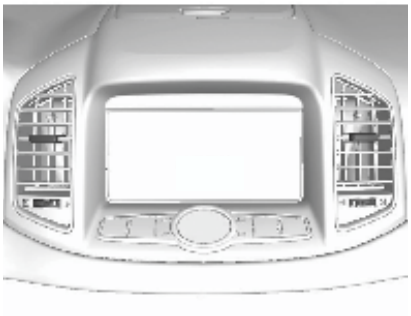
- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from air inlets at the base of the windshield that could block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside the vehicle more effectively.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors can adversely affect the performance of the system. Check with your CHEVROLET retailer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.
- Do not insert any objects in the outlets, as failure of the mechanism may occur.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Side Vents

You can direct air through both adjustable side vents toward either side of the front passenger area, or toward the side windows.

Centre Vents



You can control the direction of airflow through both adjustable centre vents.

To Shut Off the Centre Vents and the Side Vents

Turn the wheel below or next to each vent outlet to block the airflow through the vents.

⚠ Warning

Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FIXED AIR VENTS

Windscreen Defroster Vents

The windscreen defroster vents direct air onto the windscreen.

Floor Vents

The floor vents direct air into the front foot area.

Front Door Window Defroster Vents

The front door window defroster vents direct air onto the side windows, mainly in the area near the outside mirror.

Rear Vents

Cooled or heated air travels to the rear foot area through ducts underneath the front seats.

MAINTENANCE

AIR INTAKE

The air intake in front of the windshield in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake.

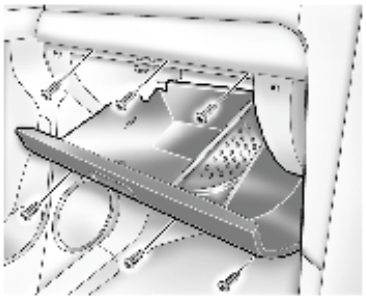
Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT A/C FILTER

The filter removes dust, pollen, and other airborne irritants from outside air that is pulled into the vehicle.

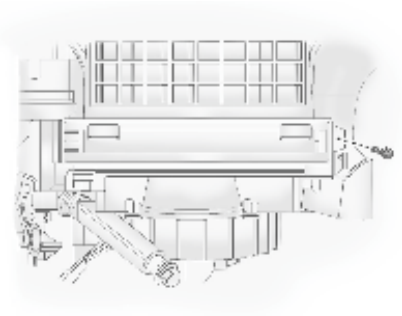
The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance. See the Maintenance Schedule for replacement intervals.

The passenger compartment A/C filter can be accessed by removing the entire glove box.



1. Remove the six screws from around the glove box.
2. Lower the loosened glove box housing.
3. Remove the glove box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. Remove the A/C filter cover screw.

Caution

Your hands could be hurt by sharp materials around the filter housing.

Be sure to wear protective gloves when replacing air conditioner filter.

5. Replace the air conditioner filter.

   See your CHEVROLET retailer if additional assistance is needed.

Note

When inserting new filter, make sure they are inserted to the correct airflow.

Note

We recommend that you consult CHEVROLET retailer to replace the filter.

Caution

More frequent maintenance of the A/C filter is required if the driving circumstances are dusty roads, air pollution areas, and frequent unpaved roads.

It makes the filter efficiency to be decreased.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AIR CONDITIONING REGULAR OPERATION

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when outside temperature is low.

Service

For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system.

- Functionality and pressure test
- Heating functionality
- Leakage check
- Check of drive belts
- Cleaning of condenser
- Evaporator drainage
- Performance check

Caution

Use only correct refrigerant.

⚠ Warning

Climate control systems are serviced by qualified personnel only. Improper service methods may cause personal injury.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DRIVING AND OPERATING

Driving Information
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 8-2
Distracted Driving 8-2
Defensive Driving 8-3
Control of a Vehicle 8-3
Braking 8-3
Steering 8-3
Off-Road Recovery 8-4
Loss of Control 8-4
Driving on Wet Roads 8-5
Highway Hypnosis 8-6
Hill and Mountain Roads 8-6
Winter Driving 8-7
If the Vehicle Is Stuck 8-8
Vehicle Load Limits 8-9
Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Break-In 8-11
Ignition Positions 8-11
Starting the Diesel Engine 8-13
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 8-15
Shifting into Park 8-15
Shifting out of Park 8-16
Parking 8-17
Parking over Things That Burn 8-18
Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 8-18
Running the Vehicle While Parked 8-19
Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 8-20
Manual Mode 8-22
Fuel Economy Mode* 8-25
Manual Transmission
Manual Transmission 8-25
Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 8-26
Brakes
Brakes 8-27
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 8-28
Parking Brake 8-29
Brake Assist* 8-31
Ride Control Systems
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* 8-32
Descent Control System (DCS)* 8-33
Automatic Level Control* 8-34
Cruise Control
Cruise Control 8-34
Object Detection Systems
Ultrasonic Parking Assist (Rear Parking Assist System) 8-37
Fuel
Fuel 8-38
Fuel for Diesel Engines 8-38
Water in Fuel 8-39
Running Out of Fuel 8-39
Filling the Tank 8-40
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 8-41

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DRIVING INFORMATION

DRIVING FOR BETTER FUEL ECONOMY

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

DISTRACTED DRIVING

Distraction comes in many forms and can take your focus from the task of driving. Exercise good judgment and do not let other activities divert your attention away from the road. Many local governments have enacted laws regarding driver distraction. Become familiar with the local laws in your area.

To avoid distracted driving, always keep your eyes on the road, hands on the wheel, and mind on the drive.

- Do not use a phone in demanding driving situations. Use a hands-free method to place or receive necessary phone calls.
- Watch the road. Do not read, take notes, or look up information on phones or other electronic devices.
- Designate a front seat passenger to handle potential distractions.
- Become familiar with vehicle features before driving, such as programming favorite radio stations and adjusting climate control and seat settings.
- Wait until the vehicle is parked to retrieve items that have fallen to the floor.
- Stop or park the vehicle to attend to children.
- Keep pets in an appropriate carrier or restraint.
- Avoid stressful conversations while driving, whether with a passenger or on a cell phone.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often could cause a crash resulting in injury or death. Focus your attention on driving.

Refer to the Infotainment section for more information on using that system, including pairing and using a cell phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DEFENSIVE DRIVING

Defensive driving means "always expect the unexpected." The first step in driving defensively is to wear the safety belt. See Safety Belts on page 2-14.

- Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready.
- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

CONTROL OF A VEHICLE

Braking, steering, and accelerating are important factors in helping to control a vehicle while driving.

BRAKING

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average driver reaction time is about three-quarters of a second. In that time, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h (60 mph) travels 20m (66 ft), which could be a lot of distance in an emergency.

Helpful braking tips to keep in mind include:

- Keep enough distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid needless heavy braking.
- Keep pace with traffic.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. Doing so could make the pedal harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

STEERING

Hydraulic Power Steering

Your vehicle has hydraulic power steering. It may require maintenance. See Power Steering Fluid on page 9-20.

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort. See your CHEVROLET retailer if there is a problem.

Curve Tips

- Take curves at a reasonable speed.
- Reduce speed before entering a curve.
- Maintain a reasonable steady speed through the curve.
- Wait until the vehicle is out of the curve before accelerating gently into the straightaway.

Steering in Emergencies

- There are some situations when steering around a problem may be more effective than braking.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Holding both sides of the steering wheel allows you to turn 180 degrees without removing a hand.
- The Antilock Brake System (ABS) allows steering while braking.

OFF-ROAD RECOVERY

The vehicle's left wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving. Follow these tips:

1. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer the vehicle so that it straddles the edge of the pavement.
2. Turn the steering wheel about one-eighth of a turn, until the left front tire contacts the pavement edge.
3. Then turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

LOSS OF CONTROL

Skidding

There are three types of skids that correspond to the vehicle's three control systems:

- Braking Skid - wheels are not rolling.
- Steering or Cornering Skid - too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force.
- Acceleration Skid - too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

If the vehicle starts to slide, follow these suggestions:

- Ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. The vehicle may straighten out. Be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Slow down and adjust your driving according to weather conditions. Stopping distance can be longer and vehicle control can be affected when traction is reduced by water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material on the road. Learn to recognize warning clues - such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface- and slow down when you have any doubt.
- Try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide.

  Remember: Antilock brakes help avoid only the braking skid.

DRIVING ON WET ROADS

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ Warning

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause the vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under the vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When the vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See Tires on page 9-43.
- Turn off cruise control.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HIGHWAY HYPNOSIS

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park the vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep the interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving - scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

HILL AND MOUNTAIN ROADS

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Shift to a lower gear when going down steep or long hills.

⚠ Warning

If you do not shift down, the brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking and you could crash. Shift down to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ Warning

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. The brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down and they could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking and you could crash. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear when going downhill.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Be alert on top of hills; something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WINTER DRIVING

Driving on Snow or Ice

Drive carefully when there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, creating less traction or grip.

Wet ice can occur at about 0°C (32°F) when freezing rain begins to fall, resulting in even less traction. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated with salt or sand.

Drive with caution, whatever the condition. Accelerate gently so traction is not lost. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tires slick, so there is even less traction.

Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more.

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 8-28 improves vehicle stability during hard stops on slippery roads, but apply the brakes sooner than when on dry pavement.

Allow greater following distance on any slippery road and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering maneuvers and braking while on ice.

Turn off cruise control on slippery surfaces.

Blizzard Conditions

Being stuck in snow can be a serious situation. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.
- Use warning triangle.

⚠ Warning

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle is stuck in the snow:

- Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Check again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.
- Open a window about 5 cm (2 in) on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind to bring in fresh air.

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that circulates the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see Engine Exhaust on page 8-18.

Run the engine for short periods only as needed to keep warm, but be careful.

To save fuel, run the engine for only short periods as needed to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and close the window most of the way to save heat. Repeat this until help arrives but only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes some time for help to arrive, now and then when you run the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible to save fuel.

IF THE VEHICLE IS STUCK

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.

If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method.

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 56 km/h (35 mph).

For information about using tire chains on the vehicle, see Tire Chains on page 9-53.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rocking the Vehicle to Get it Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear, or with a manual transmission, between 1 (First) or 2 (Second) and R (Reverse), spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see Towing the Vehicle on page 9-65.

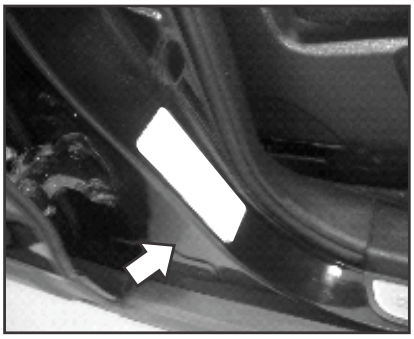
VEHICLE LOAD LIMITS

It is very important to know how much weight the vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo and all nonfactory - installed options. Two labels on the vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry, the Tire Information label and the Certification label.

⚠ Warning

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Tire Information Label



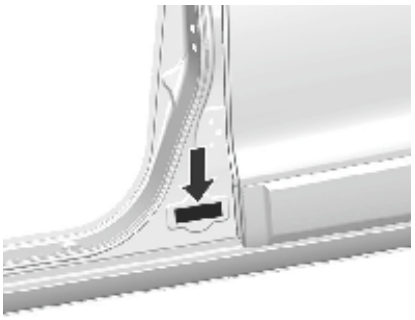
A vehicle specific Tire Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver's door open, you will find the label attached near the door lock post.

The Tire Information label shows the tire size of the original equipment tires and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures. For more informa-

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tion on tires and inflation, see Tires on page 9-43 and Tire Pressure on page 9-45.

Certification Label



A vehicle specific Certification label is attached to the lower area of the center pillar (B-Pillar) on the passenger side of the vehicle. The label tells you the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axles. The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo. See Technical Data - Vehicle Specifications on page no 11-3. Never exceed the GVWR for the vehicle, or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle.

If the vehicle is carrying a heavy load, it should be spread out.

Note

Identification plate / label includes the Certification label information as well.

⚠ Warning

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Things inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the cargo area of the vehicle. In the cargo area, put them as far forward as possible. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- Secure loose items in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless needed.

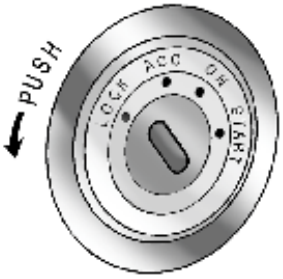
STARTING AND OPERATING

NEW VEHICLE BREAK-IN

Use the following precautions for the first few hundred kilometers to improve the performance and economy of your vehicle and add to its long life :

- Avoid full-throttle starts.
- Do not race the engine.
- Avoid hard stops except in emergencies. This will allow your brakes to bed in properly.
- Avoid quick starts, sudden accelerations, and prolonged highspeed driving in order to avoid damage to the engine and conserve fuel. Avoid full-throttle acceleration in low gear.
- Do not tow any other vehicle.

IGNITION POSITIONS



The ignition switch has four different positions.

Caution

Using a tool to force the key to turn in the ignition could cause damage to the switch or break the key. Use the correct key, make sure it is all the way in, and turn it only with your hand. If the key cannot be turned by hand, see your CHEVROLET retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LOCK (STOPPING THE ENGINE/ LOCK/OFF): When the vehicle is stopped, turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF to turn the engine off. Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 8-15.

This is the only position from which you can remove the key. This locks the steering wheel, ignition, and automatic transmission. Push in the ignition switch as you turn the key towards you.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to neutral. This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to neutral, firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop. Shift to P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or Neutral with a manual transmission. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
4. Set the parking brake. See Parking Brake on page 8-29.

⚠ Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, turn the ignition to ACC/ACCESSORY.

The ignition switch can bind in the LOCK/OFF position with your wheels turned off center. If this happens, move the steering wheel from right to left while turning the key to ACC/ ACCESSORY. If this doesn't work, then the vehicle needs service.

ACC (ACC/ACCESSORY): This position provides power to some of the electrical accessories. It unlocks the steering wheel and ignition. To move the key from ACC/ ACCESSORY to LOCK/OFF, push in the key and then turn it to LOCK/OFF.

ON (ON/RUN): The ignition switch stays in this position when the engine is running. This position can be used to operate the electrical accessories. This position can also be used for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes.

To shift out of P (Park), turn the ignition

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

to ON/RUN and apply the brake pedal.

The battery could be drained if you leave the key in the ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position with the engine off. You may not be able to start the vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

START: This position starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition switch will return to ON/RUN for normal driving.

STARTING THE DIESEL ENGINE

Automatic Transmission

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the vehicle when it is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

Caution
Shifting into P (Park) with the vehicle moving could damage the transmission. Shift into P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

Manual Transmission

The shift lever should be in N (Neutral) and the parking brake engaged. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor and start the engine. The vehicle will not start if the clutch pedal is not all the way down.

To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

Starting the Diesel Engine

1. Turn the ignition key to ON/RUN. Observe the wait-to-start light. See Wait-to-Start Light on page 4-26. This light may not come on if the engine is warm.
2. As soon as the wait-to-start light goes off, immediately turn the ignition key to START. When the engine starts, release the key. The engine has a fast warm-up glow plug system. The wait to start light will illuminate for a much shorter time than most diesel engines, due to the rapid heating of the glow plug system.

Caution
If the wait-to-start light stays on after starting the vehicle, the vehicle may not run properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. If the engine does not start after 15 seconds of cranking, turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF. Wait one minute for the starter to cool, then try the same steps again.

If you are trying to start the engine after you have run out of fuel, follow the steps in Running Out of Fuel on page 8-39.

When the engine is cold, let it run for a few minutes before you move the vehicle. This lets oil pressure build up. The engine will sound louder when it's cold.

Caution

If you are not in an idling vehicle and the engine overheats, you would not be there to see the overheated engine indication. This could damage the vehicle. Do not let the engine run when you are not in the vehicle.

If the Diesel Engine Will Not Start

If you have run out of fuel, look at Running Out of Fuel on page 8-39. See Fuel for Diesel Engines on page 8-38.

If the vehicle is not out of fuel, and the engine will not start, do this:

Turn the ignition key to ON/RUN. Immediately after the wait-to-start light goes off, turn the ignition key to START.

If the light does not go off, wait a few seconds, then try starting the engine again. See your CHEVROLET retailer as soon as you can for a starting system check.

If the light comes on and then goes off and you know the battery is charged, but the engine still will not start, the vehicle needs service.

If the light does not come on when the engine is cold, the vehicle needs service.

If the battery does not have enough charge to start the engine, see Battery on page 9-26.

Be sure you have the right oil for the engine, and that you have changed the oil at the proper times. If you use the wrong oil, the engine may be harder to start.

Be sure you are using the proper fuel for existing weather conditions.

See Fuel for Diesel Engines on page 8-38.

If the engine starts, runs a short time, then stops, the vehicle needs service.

⚠ Warning

Do not use starting aids, such as ether, in the air intake. They could damage the engine, which may not be covered by the warranty. There could also be a fire, which could cause serious personal injury.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RETAINED ACCESSORY POWER (RAP)

These vehicle accessories may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition key is turned to the LOCK/OFF position:

- Outside Mirror
- Power Windows
- Sunroof (if equipped)
- Radio

The outside mirror, power windows, radio and sunroof will function until a door is opened.

If no door is opened after the ignition key is turned to the LOCK/OFF position, all accessories will be turned off after 10 minutes.

SHIFTING INTO PARK

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow.

Use this procedure to shift into P (Park):

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the parking brake. See Parking Brake on page 8-29 for more information.
2. Hold the button on the shift lever and push the lever toward the front of the vehicle into P (Park).
3. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
4. Remove the key.

Leaving the Vehicle With the Engine Running

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, the vehicle must be in P (Park) and the parking brake set.

Release the button and check that the shift lever cannot be moved out of P (Park).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Torque Lock

Torque lock is when the weight of the vehicle puts too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. This happens when parking on a hill and shifting the transmission into P (Park) is not done properly and then it is difficult to shift out of P (Park). To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park). To find out how, see "Shifting into Park" listed previously.

If torque lock does occur, the vehicle may need to be pushed uphill by another vehicle to relieve the parking pawl pressure, so you can shift out of P (Park).

SHIFTING OUT OF PARK

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to:

- Prevent movement of the shift lever out of P (Park), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN and the brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock release is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9-volt) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See Jump Starting on page 9-61.

To shift out of P (Park):

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Press the shift lever button.
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

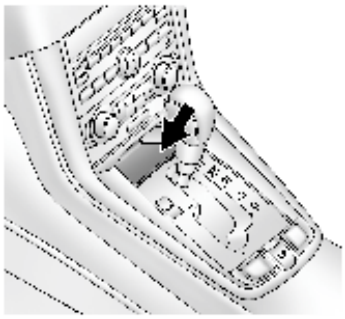
If still unable to shift out of P (Park):

1. Fully release the shift lever button.
2. Hold the brake pedal down and press the shift lever button again.
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If the shift lever still cannot be moved from P (Park), see "Shift Lock Manual Release."

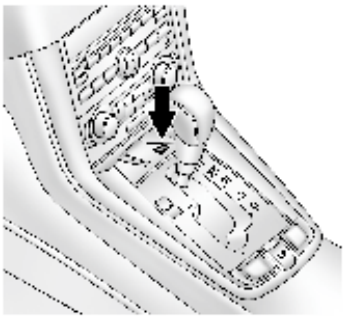
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shift Lock Manual Release



The vehicle may have a Shift Lock Manual Release system. If you cannot shift out of P (Park) with the ignition in ON/RUN and the brake pedal applied:

1. Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
2. Hold the brake pedal down.
3. Remove the mat from the bottom of the storage area in front of the shifter.



4. Press and hold the shift lock release button in the floor of the storage area.
5. Shift to N (Neutral).
6. Reinstall the mat.
7. Start the engine and shift into the gear you want.
8. Have the vehicle repaired as soon as possible.

PARKING

If the vehicle has a manual transmission, before getting out of the vehicle, move the shift lever into R (Reverse), and apply the electric parking brake. See Parking Brake on page 8-29. Once the shift lever has been placed into R (Reverse) with the clutch pedal pressed in, turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF, remove the key, and release the clutch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PARKING OVER THINGS THAT BURN

⚠ Warning

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

ENGINE EXHAUST

ENGINE EXHAUST

⚠ Warning

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gas.

Caution

Use of fuel with low quality or too low cetane number may damage the engine, the catalytic converter or electronic components.

Unburnt fuel will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a CHEVROLET retailer as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Caution

Don't touch the catalytic converter during engine operating and it can be possible to touch the catalytic converter after cooling down the catalytic converter because the catalytic converter is very hot so the skin (i.e. hand or body) can be burned: cooling down condition-cool down over two hours under ambient temperature after engine stop.

RUNNING THE VEHICLE WHILE PARKED

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

⚠ Warning

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled.

It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see Engine Exhaust on page 8-18.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the automatic transmission shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park).

Follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See Shifting into Park on page 8-15.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The automatic transmission permits manual gear shifting (manual mode) or automatic gear shifting (automatic mode).

The automatic transmission is an electronically controlled six-speed transmission.

Sixth gear is overdrive.

Starting the Vehicle

1. After warming up the engine, continue to press the brake pedal while shifting the shift lever to either the R, D position.

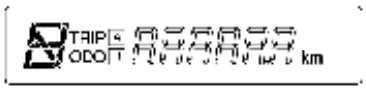
Caution

Do not shift between D (Drive) and R (Reverse) or P (Park) while the vehicle is moving.

This will cause damage to your transmission and personal injury.

2. Release the parking brake and the brake pedal.
3. Slowly press the accelerator pedal to set the vehicle in motion.

Transmission Display



It is located in the instrument cluster. It indicates the selected gear or transmission mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shift Lever

The shift lever is located on the console between the seats.

There are several different positions for the automatic transmission.

P (Park): This position locks the front wheels. It is the best position to use when starting the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily.

> **⚠ Warning**
>
> It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.
>
> Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See Shifting into Park on page 8-15.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the engine. The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. The regular brakes must be applied first and then the shift lever button pressed before you can shift from P (Park) when the ignition key is in ON/RUN. If you cannot shift out of P (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. See Shifting out of Park on page 8-16.

R (Reverse): Use this gear to back up.

> **Caution**
>
> Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

To rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice or sand without damaging the transmission, see If the Vehicle Is Stuck on page 8-8.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

N (Neutral): In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only. Also, use N (Neutral) when the vehicle is being towed.

⚠ Warning

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

Caution

Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.

D (Drive): This position is for normal driving, and allows the transmission to shift into all forward gears. It provides the best fuel economy.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding. See“Skidding” under Loss of Control on page 8-4.

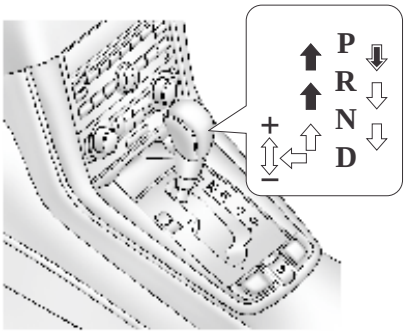
Caution

Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

MANUAL MODE

MANUAL SHIFT MODE (MSM) (Automatic Transmission)

Shifting between gear positions



Shifting between gear positions is as follows:

Depress the brake pedal and push release button to shift.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shifts that require you to push the release button are indicated by black arrows.

Push the release button to shift.

White arrows indicate shifts that do not require you to push the release button.

Shift freely.

Whether your vehicle is stationary or in motion, manual mode is selected by pulling the shift lever from the "D" position to the left into the manual gate. To return to "D" range operation, push the shift lever back to the right into the main gate.

In manual mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards can make rapid gearshifts simple. In contrast to a manual transaxle, the manual mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

Up(+): Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down(-): Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

Note

In manual mode, only the five forward gears can be selected.

To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the "R" or "P" position as required.

Note

In manual mode, downward shifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.

To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.

Before driving away from a stop on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving away on a slippery road. Pull the shift lever to the - (down) to shift back to 1st gear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

In manual mode, the driver must execute upward shifts in accordance with prevailing road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.

Since sudden engine braking and/or rapid acceleration can cause a loss of traction, however, downshifts must be made carefully in accordance with the vehicle's speed.

Engine braking

To help use the braking effect of engine compression when driving on a long downhill select manual mode down-shift to a lower gear in a sequential order.

⚠ Warning

Do not downshift transmission by two or more gear positions at a time.

This prevents damage to your transmission or loss of control and personal injuries.

Note

Use of engine compression during long mountainous descents may prolong the life of your brakes.

Rocking the vehicle

Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow.

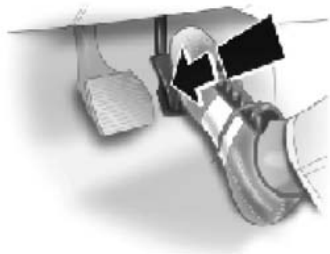
Move the shift lever between D and R in a repeat pattern.

Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Parking

After stoping the vehicle with pressing the brake pedal, engage P and apply the parking brake and then remove ignition key.

Kickdown



For faster acceleration press the accelerator pedal all the way down and hold. The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on the engine speed.

Fault

In the event of a fault, the malfunction indicator light illuminates. The transmission no longer shifts automatically nor manually because it is locked in a certain gear.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by CHEVROLET retailer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUEL ECONOMY MODE*

The vehicle may have a fuel economy mode. When engaged, fuel economy mode can improve the vehicle's fuel economy.

eco

Pressing the eco button, the shift lever will engage fuel economy mode. When activated, the eco light in the instrument cluster will come on. See Fuel Economy Light on page 4-28. Pressing the button a second time will turn fuel economy mode off.

When fuel economy mode is on:

- The transmission will upshift sooner, and downshift later.
- The torque converter will lock-up sooner, and stay on longer.
- The accelerator pedal will be less sensitive.
- The vehicle's computers will more aggressively shut off fuel to the engine under deceleration.

Do not use fuel economy mode while towing.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1 (First): Press the clutch pedal and shift into 1 (First). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

You can shift into 1 (First) when you are going less than 32 km/h (20 mph). If you have come to a complete stop and it is hard to shift into 1 (First), put the shift lever in N (Neutral) and let up on the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down. Then shift into 1 (First).

2 (Second): Press the clutch pedal as you let up on the accelerator pedal and

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

shift into 2 (Second). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

3 (Third), 4 (Fourth), 5 (Fifth), 6 (Sixth): Shift into 3 (Third), 4 (Fourth), 5 (Fifth), and 6 (Sixth) the same way you do for 2 (Second). Slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

If vehicle speed drops below 32 km/h (20 mph), or if the engine is not running smoothly, you should downshift to the next lower gear. You may have to downshift two or more gears to keep the engine running smoothly or for good performance.

To stop, let up on the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal. Just before the vehicle stops, press the clutch pedal and the brake pedal, and shift to N (Neutral).

N (Neutral): Use this position when you start or idle the engine.

R (Reverse): To back up, press down on the clutch pedal and press the button on the back of the shift knob while moving the shift lever into the R (Reverse) position. Let up on the clutch pedal slowly while pressing the accelerator pedal.

Caution
Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

Also, use R (Reverse) along with the parking brake for parking the vehicle.

Do not grind the clutch unnecessarily. When operation, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use pedal as a foot rest.

Caution
It is inadvisable to drive with hand resting on the shift lever.

DRIVE SYSTEMS

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

If your vehicle has active on demand all-wheel drive (AWD), the AWD system operates automatically without any action required by the driver. If the front drive wheels begin to slip, the rear wheels will automatically begin to drive the vehicle as required. There may be a slight engagement noise during hard use but this is normal.

The AWD warning light blinks when AWD system is temporarily disabled. If the light blinks briefly, and then goes out, this is normal and does not indicate a system fault. However if the light blinks continuously, you should consult a CHEVROLET retailer to repair the problem as soon as possible.

The light comes on to indicate that there is a malfunction in the AWD system. If it happens, your vehicle should be serviced by a CHEVROLET retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BRAKES

BRAKES

The braking system is designed for braking performance under a wide range of driving conditions.

Your vehicle is equipped with front and rear disc brakes and a dual circuit braking system.

If one brake circuit should fail, the vehicle can still be stopped with the remaining circuit, however, stopping distance will be increased and more brake pedal pressure will be required.

⚠ Warning

If one of the circuits fail, the brake pedal must be pressed with greater pedal pressure and the braking distance is increased.

Have the brake system checked and repaired by a CHEVROLET retailer.

⚠ Warning

If the brake pedal can be pressed further than normal, the brakes may be in need of repair.

Consult a CHEVROLET retailer.

Caution

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal.

Doing so will accelerate wear of the brake components. The brakes may also become overheated, resulting in longer braking distance and an unsafe condition.

In some models, center high-mounted stop lamp (or with brake lamps) blinks serveral times to alert drivers coming behind your vehicle on the following condition:

- Although brakes are operated, a vehicle run more than a certain speed.
- When ABS is working at that time.

Wet Brakes

Driving through water or washing your car can get the brake components wet.

To restore normal braking:

1. Check behind you for other vehicles.
2. Keep a safe forward speed with plenty of space to your rear and sides.
3. Gently apply brakes until normal performance is restored.

Overheated Brakes

Braking excessively when going down a long steep hill can temporarily overheat the brakes. Shift to a lower gear when going down hills. Do not continuously apply the brakes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

After driving through deep water, washing the vehicle, or using the brakes excessively when going down a steep hill, the brakes can temporarily lose their stopping power. This may be due to wet brake components or overheating.

If your brakes temporarily lose their stopping power because of overheating:

Shift to a lower gear when going down hills. Do not continuously apply the brakes.

⚠ Warning

If your brakes temporarily lose their power because of wet brake components, the following procedure will help restore their normal performance.

1. Check behind you for other vehicles.
2. Keep a safe forward speed with plenty of space to your rear and sides.
3. Gently apply the brakes until normal performance is restored.

⚠ Warning

When brake noise is heard, do not continue to drive your vehicle.

This may indicate the brake pads need to be repaired or replaced. Driving with worn brake pads could result in a collision and personal injury.

ANTILOCK BRAKE SYSTEM (ABS)

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

The ABS control can be known by vibration and noise of the ABS process.

To optimum stop the vehicle, keep depressing the footbrake even if the brake pedal vibrate.

Do not decrease your power to depress the footbrake.

When you start the vehicle after ignition switched ON, you can hear mechanical sounds. It is normal that the ABS is to be ready.

See Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 4-22.

Fault

⚠ Warning

If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a CHEVROLET retailer.

Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let ABS work. You might hear the ABS pump or motor operating and feel the brake pedal pulsate, but this is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

PARKING BRAKE

The vehicle has an Electric Parking Brake (EPB). The switch for the EPB is in the center console. The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is OFF. To prevent draining the battery, avoid repeated cycles of the EPB system when the engine is not running.

The system has a parking brake status light (P) and a parking brake warning light . See Electric Parking Brake Light on page 4-21. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Before leaving the vehicle, check the parking brake status lamp to insure the parking brake is applied.

EPB Apply

The EPB can be applied any time the vehicle is stopped. The EPB is applied by momentarily lifting up on the EPB switch. Once fully applied, the parking brake status light (P) will be on. While the brake is being applied, the status lamp will flash until full apply is reached. If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, you need to have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the parking brake status light is flashing. See your CHEVROLET retailer. See Electric Parking Brake Light on page 4-21 for more information.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is in motion, a chime will sound. The vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is held in the up position. Releasing the EPB switch during the deceleration will release the parking brake. If the switch is held in the up position until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

If the parking brake status light (P) flashes continuously, the EPB is only partially applied or released, or there is a problem with the EPB. If this light flashes continuously, release the EPB, and attempt to apply it again. If this light continues to flash, do not drive the vehicle. See your CHEVROLET retailer.

If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To apply the EPB when this light is on, lift up on the EPB switch and hold it in the up position. Full application of the parking brake by the EPB system may take a longer period of time than normal when this light is on. Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light (P) remains on. If the parking brake warning light is on, see your CHEVROLET retailer.

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

EPB Release

To release the EPB, place the ignition in the ON/RUN position, apply and hold the brake pedal, and push down momentarily on the EPB switch. If you attempt to release the EPB without the brake pedal applied, a chime will sound and the apply footbrake light will appear. The EPB is released when the parking brake status light (P) is off.

If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To release the EPB when this light is on, push down on the EPB switch and hold it in the down position. EPB release may take a longer period of time than normal when this light is on. Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light (P) is off. If the light is on, see your CHEVROLET retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

⚠ Warning

If the parking brake is not set properly, the vehicle may move suddenly. See a CHEVROLET retailer if an adjustment is required.

Caution

Do not drive with the parking brake on.

This can cause your rear parking brakes to overheat or wear out prematurely. You may have to replace them, and you could damage other parts of your vehicle.

Caution

Do not park or operate your vehicle over combustible materials.

They could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite.

BRAKE ASSIST*

This vehicle has a brake assist feature designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. The brake assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RIDE CONTROL SYSTEMS

ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC)*

The vehicle has an Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system which combines antilock brake, traction, and stability control systems and helps the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle in most driving conditions.

ESC activates when the computer senses a discrepancy between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually travelling. ESC selectively applies braking pressure at any one of the vehicle's brakes to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path.

When the vehicle is started and begins to move, the system performs several diagnostic checks to insure there are no problems. The system may be heard or felt while it is working. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

This light on the instrument panel cluster will flash when ESC is on and activated.

If the system fails to turn on or activate, this light will be on solid. When the light is on solid, the system will not assist the driver in maintaining directional control of the vehicle. Adjust your driving accordingly.

ESC may also turn off automatically if it determines that a problem exists with the system. The ESC warning light will be on solid to warn the driver that ESC is disabled and requires service. If the problem does not clear itself after restarting the vehicle, see your CHEVROLET retailer for service.

The ESC can be turned off or on by pressing and releasing on the instrument panel.

The ESC Off light turns on solid when the system has been turned off.

It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow, and you want to “rock” the vehicle to attempt to free it.

If cruise control is being used when ESC activates, the cruise control automatically disengages. The cruise control can be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See Cruise Control on page 8-34.

Traction Control System (TCS)*

The vehicle has a Traction Control System that limits wheel spin. This is especially useful in slippery road conditions. The system operates only if it senses that any of the drive wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, TCS applies the brakes to limit wheel spin and also reduces engine power. The system may be heard or felt while it is working, but this is normal.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)*

The system helps prevent rollback when driving away on hill. When depress the accelerator pedal after release the brake pedal on hill, the brakes remain on for approximately 2 seconds.

Active Rollover Protection (ARP)*

This function is part of the ESC system. When the vehicle moves in an extremely unstable manner, this function helps the vehicle maintain normal stability.

Caution
When the ESC system activates to correct the vehicle stability, reduce the speed and pay extra attention to the road. The ESC system is only a supplementary device for the vehicle. When the vehicle exceeds its physical limits, it cannot be controlled. Do not rely on the system. Keep driving safely. When the ESC is applied, you may hear some noise or feel a vibration from the brake pedal or other relevant system. They are caused by pressure changes in the relevant systems.

DESCENT CONTROL SYSTEM (DCS)*

The Descent Control System (DCS) allows the vehicle to travel at a low speed without applying the brake.

The vehicle will automatically decelerate to a low speed and remain there when DCS is turned on.

Use only when descending steep grades while driving off-road. Do not use when driving on normal road surfaces.

Some noise or vibration from the brake system may be heard or felt when DCS is active. This is normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn the system on by pressing the DCS button located on the instrument panel. The green DCS light comes on steady when the system is on.

The green DCS light flashes on the instrument panel while driving at speeds below 50 km/h (30 mph) to show the system is operating.

DCS will not activate at speeds above 50 km/h (30 mph), even if the button is pressed.

Caution

- DCS is designed for driving down steep off-road hills.
- Unnecessary use of DCS can cause malfunctions in the brake system or ESC.

To turn the system off, press the DCS button again and the DCS light turns off. Applying the brake or accelerator will also cause DCS to turn off.

The amber DCS light flashes when the system is not ready due to high temperature through severe or repeated braking. The light will turn off when the system cools.

The amber DCS light comes on steady if there is a system malfunction.

Caution

If the amber Descent Control System Light comes on and stays on, the system is malfunctioning. See your CHEVROLET retailer for service.

AUTOMATIC LEVEL CONTROL*

This feature keeps the rear of the vehicle level as the load changes. The system is automatic and no adjustments are necessary.

CRUISE CONTROL

CRUISE CONTROL

For vehicles with cruise control, a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more can be maintained without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below 40 km/h (25 mph).

When the brakes are applied, or the cancel button pressed, the cruise control turns off.

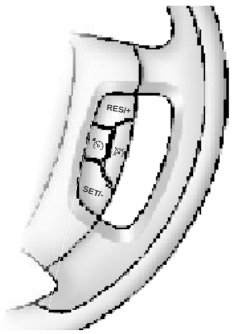
If the vehicle is in cruise control when the traction control system, if equipped, begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control automatically disengages. The cruise control can be turned back on, when road conditions are safe again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use the cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.



The cruise control buttons are located on the right side of the steering wheel.

(On/Off): Press to turn the cruise control on or off.

RES/+ (Accelerate/Resume): Press to make the vehicle resume to a previously set speed or accelerate.

SET/- (Set/Coast): Press to set the speed and activate cruise control or make the vehicle decelerate.

(Cancel): Press to disengage the cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Setting Cruise Control

If the cruise button is on when not in use, you might hit a button and go into cruise when not desired. Keep the cruise control switch off when cruise is not being used.

1. Press to turn cruise control on.
2. Get up to the speed desired.
3. Press SET/- and release it. The cruise control light comes on in the instrument panel cluster to show that the cruise control is on.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, or is pressed, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed is about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, briefly press RES/+.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The vehicle returns to the previously set speed and stays there.

If RES/+ is held, the vehicle speed continues to increase until the button is released, the brake pedal is applied, or is pressed. Do not hold in the RES/+ button, unless you want the vehicle to go faster.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to a higher speed. Press SET/-, then release the button and the accelerator pedal.
- Press and hold the RES/+ until the desired speed is reached, and then release it.
- To increase the vehicle speed in small amounts, briefly press RES/+ and then release it. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 2 km/h (1.2 mph) faster.

The accelerate feature only works after the cruise control is turned on by pressing SET/-.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press SET/- until the lower speed desired is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in small amounts, briefly press SET/- . Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 2 km/h(1.2 mph) slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previously set cruise control speed.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control works on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle speed down. When the brakes are applied the cruise control is disengaged.

Disengaging Cruise Control

There are several ways to turn off the cruise control :

- Step lightly on the brake pedal or press the button, or press the clutch pedal, if you have a manual transaxle.
- Press the button on the cruise control pad.

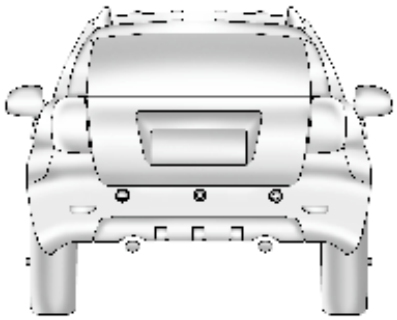
Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory by pressing or if the vehicle is turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OBJECT DETECTION SYSTEMS

ULTRASONIC PARKING ASSIST (Rear Parking Assist System)



The parking assistance system aids the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed behind the vehicle.

This system is turned on whenever the ignition switch is ON and the transmission is shifted to R (Reverse).

This system is a deactivated when the vehicle's speed is greater than approximately 25 km/h.

The chime sounds once when shifting to R (Reverse). This indicates a normal condition.

Chime Warning Sound

You can figure out the distance between your vehicle and obstacles using the chime warning sound.

Note

The parking assistance system warning light can come on to indicate that the sensors are dirty.

If the warning light is on due to the sensors being dirty, clean the sensors with a soft sponge and clean water.

If the warning light is still on after cleaning the sensors, consult your CHEVROLET retailer to repair the problem as soon as possible.

Caution

If the following happens, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the parking assistance system. Consult a CHEVROLET retailer as soon as possible.

- The parking assistance system warning lamp comes on while driving.
- The chime sounds for 6 times repeatedly when there are no obstacles around the rear bumper.

Rear Warning Type			
Warning Zone	**Zone 1**	**Zone 2**	**Zone 3**
Warning Range	120~81 cm	80~41 cm	40cm~
Warning Sound	gong---gong---gong	gong-gong-gong	continuous

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

Parking assistance system should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the view.

The audible warning signal can be different depending on the objects.

The audible warning signal might not activate in case the sensor is frozen or stained with dirt or mud.

There is a chance of malfunction of the parking assistance system when driving on uneven surface such as woods, gravel road, jagged road, or gradient.

Do not push, or scratch the surface of the sensor. This will likely damage the covering.

The parking assistance system might not recognise sharp objects, thick winter clothes or sponges which absorb the frequency.

Caution

When receiving other ultrasonic signals (metal sound or air braking noises from heavy commercial vehicles), the parking assistance system may not work properly.

Clean dirty sensors with a soft sponge and clean water.

You should continue to utilise the mirror or turning your head.

Normal precautions when reversing should be maintained.

Do not press or shock the sensors by hitting or directing a high pressure water gun directly at them while washing, or the sensors will be damaged.

In the car park, the upper portion of the vehicle can be hit before the sensor operation, so check with outside rearview mirrors or by turning your head during parking.

FUEL

FUEL

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of this vehicle, keeps the engine clean, and maintains optimum vehicle performance.

FUEL FOR DIESEL ENGINES

Diesel engines must be operated only on commercially available diesel fuel meeting the specifications of DIN EN 590. Marine diesel fuel, fuel oils, diesel fuels, which are entirely or partially plant based such as rape seed oil or bio-diesel, Aquazole and similar diesel-water emulsions must not be used. The flow and filterability of diesel fuels are insufficient at low temperatures, as a result of crystallized paraffins. Diesel fuels with improved low-temperature properties are therefore available on the market during the winter months. Make sure that you use winter fuel before the start of the cold weather season. Use of diesel fuels with manufacturer guaranteed winter properties eliminates the need for additives.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WATER IN FUEL

Drain diesel fuel filter of residual water at every engine oil change.

1. Place a container underneath the filter housing.
2. Turn drain plug, located on the left of the filter housing, counterclockwise using a suitable screwdriver, to drain off the water. The filter is drained as soon as diesel fuel emerges from the port.
3. Retighten the drain plug by turning it clockwise.
4. With engine switched off, turn ignition key to ON, wait approx. 5 seconds, and turn key to LOCK to perform priming operation. Perform this operation 3 times or more while the engine is switched off, to avoid air entering the fuel line.

Check diesel fuel filter at shorter intervals if the vehicle is subjected to extreme operating conditions such as high humidity (primarily in coastal areas), extremely high or low outside temperatures and substantially varying daytime and nighttime temperatures. If there is water in the diesel fuel filter, a warning light illuminates in the instrument panel. See Water in Fuel Warning Light on page 4-29. Drain the water immediately.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of diesel fuel requires priming after fuel is added. With engine switched off, turn ignition key to ON, wait approximately 5 seconds, and turn key to LOCK to perform priming operation. Perform this operation 3 times or more while the engine is switched off, to avoid air entering the fuel line.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FILLING THE TANK

Caution

If you use inappropriate grade fuel or put incorrect fuel additives into the fuel tank, the engine and catalytic converter may seriously be damaged.

Be sure to use the correct fuel corresponding to your vehicle when refueling. If you fill petrol in your diesel powered vehicle, your vehicle can be seriously damaged. If you vehicle has diesel engine, you can confirm the correct fuel by taking a look at information on the fuel filler cap.

For safety reasons, fuel containers, pumps and hoses must be properly earthed. Static electricity build up can ignite the fuel vapor. You can be burnt and your vehicle can be damaged.

Danger

Before refueling, switch off engine and any external heaters with combustion chambers. Switch off any mobile phone.

Vaporised fuel can be ignited by electromagnetic waves or electric current of mobile phone.

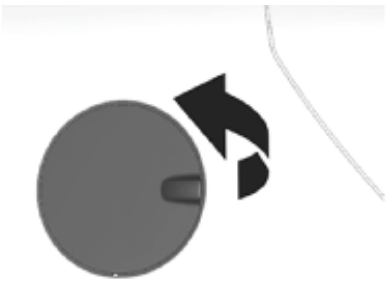
Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks. Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refueling.

Remove static electricity on your hands by touching something able to release static electricity when touching or opening fuel cap or refueling nozzle.

Don't do any action making static electricity like getting on and off vehicle when refueling. Vaporised fuel can be ignited by static electricity.

Danger

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a CHEVROLET retailer.

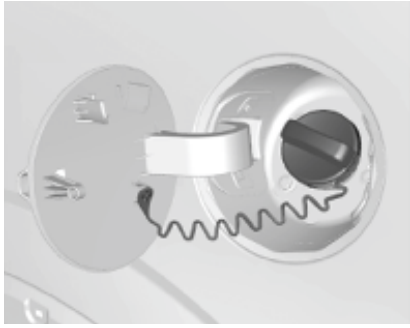


The fuel filler door is in the left rear side of vehicle.

1. Stop the engine.
2. Unlock the door by pressing the door lock switch on the driver's door trim pad.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Open the fuel filler door.
4. Turn the fuel filler cap counter-clockwise slowly. If a hissing sound is heard, wait for it to stop before completely unscrewing the cap.



5. Remove the cap. The cap is tethered to the hinge hook.
6. After refueling, close cap. Turn it clockwise until you hear "click" sound.
7. Push the fuel filler door closed until it latches.

Note

If, in cold weather, the fuel filter door does not open, tap the door lightly. Then try to open it again.

Caution

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER

⚠ Warning

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You can be badly burned and the vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense fuel only into approved containers.
- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Do not smoke while pumping fuel.
- Do not use a cellular phone while pumping fuel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VEHICLE CARE

General Information
Accessories and Modifications 9-2
Vehicle Storage 9-2
Vehicle Checks
Doing Your Own Service Work 9-3
Hood 9-3
Engine Compartment Overview 9-5
Engine Oil 9-6
Engine Oil Life System 9-11
Recommended Engine Oil and Maintenance Schedule 9-12
Automatic Transmission Fluid 9-12
Manual Transmission Fluid .. 9-12
Hydraulic Clutch 9-13
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 9-13
Cooling System 9-14
Engine Coolant 9-15
Engine Overheating 9-19
Power Steering Fluid 9-20
Washer Fluid 9-22
Brakes 9-23
Brakes Fluid 9-24
Clutch Fluid 9-25
Battery 9-26
All-Wheel Drive 9-27
Starter Switch Check 9-27
Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check 9-28
Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check 9-28
Wiper Blade Replacement 9-29
Headlamp Aiming 9-30
Bulb Replacement 9-30
Halogen Bulbs 9-30
Headlamps, Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps 9-31
Fog Lamps 9-33
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, Rear Fog Lamps and Back-Up Lamps 9-33
Side Turn Signal Lamps.....9-34
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL).....9-34
License Plate Lamp 9-34
Interior Lamps 9-35
Electrical System
Electrical System Overload .. 9-36
Fuses and Circuit Breakers ... 9-37
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 9-37
Instrument Panel Fuse Block ..9-40
Auxiliary Engine Room Fuse Block 9-42
Wheels and Tires
Tires 9-43
Winter Tires 9-44
Tire Pressure 9-45
Tread Depth 9-48
Tire Inspection 9-48
Tire Rotation 9-49
When It Is Time for New Tires 9-50

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Buying New Tires 9-50
Different Size Tires and Wheels 9-51
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 9-51
Wheel Replacement 9-52
Tire Chains 9-53
If a Tire Goes Flat 9-53
Tire Changing 9-55
Storing a Flat Tire and Tools ..9-60
Compact Spare Tire 9-60
Jump Starting
Jump Starting 9-61
Towing
Towing the Vehicle 9-65
Emergency Towing 9-66
Appearance Care
Exterior Care 9-68
Interior Care 9-71
Floor Mats 9-73

GENERAL INFORMATION

ACCESSORIES AND MODIFICATIONS

We recommend to use genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Do not make any modifications to the electrical system. e.g. changes of electronic control units (chip turning).

Caution

Never modify your vehicle. It may affect the performance, durability and safety of the vehicle and the warranty may not cover any problems caused by the modification.

VEHICLE STORAGE

Storage for a long period of time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve rubber seals.
- Change engine oil.
- Drain washer fluid reservoir.
- Check coolant anti-freeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. For manual transmission, engage first or reverse gear. For automatic transmission, park in P position. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Open the hood, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Beware that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft alarm system.
- Close the hood.

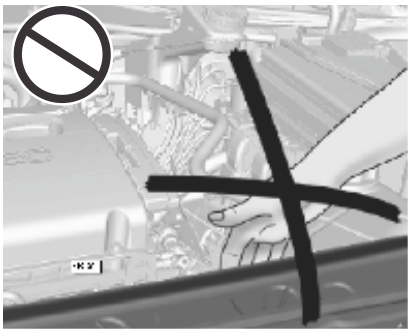
Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Activate the electronics of the power windows.
- Check tire pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.

VEHICLE CHECKS

DOING YOUR OWN SERVICE WORK

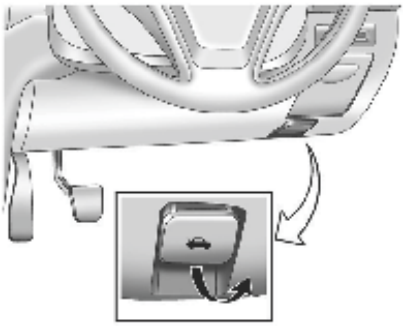


⚠ Warning

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is OFF.

The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is OFF.

HOOD



To open the hood:

1. Pull the release lever with this symbol. It is located below the instrument panel to the right of the steering wheel.
2. Go to the front of the vehicle and lift up on the secondary hood release lever.
3. Lift the hood.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To close the hood:

1. Make sure hands and other body parts as well as those of other persons, are completely away from the engine compartment and hood-to-body edges.
2. Lower the hood allowing it to drop from a height of about 30cm (1 foot).
3. Make sure the hood is locked firmly in place.

⚠ Warning

Pull on the front edge of the hood to make sure it is latched securely before you drive your vehicle.

Do not pull the hood release handle while your vehicle is moving.

Do not move your vehicle with the hood open. An open hood will obscure the driver's vision.

Operating your vehicle with the hood open can lead to a collision resulting in damage to your vehicle, to other property, personal injury or even death.

⚠ Warning

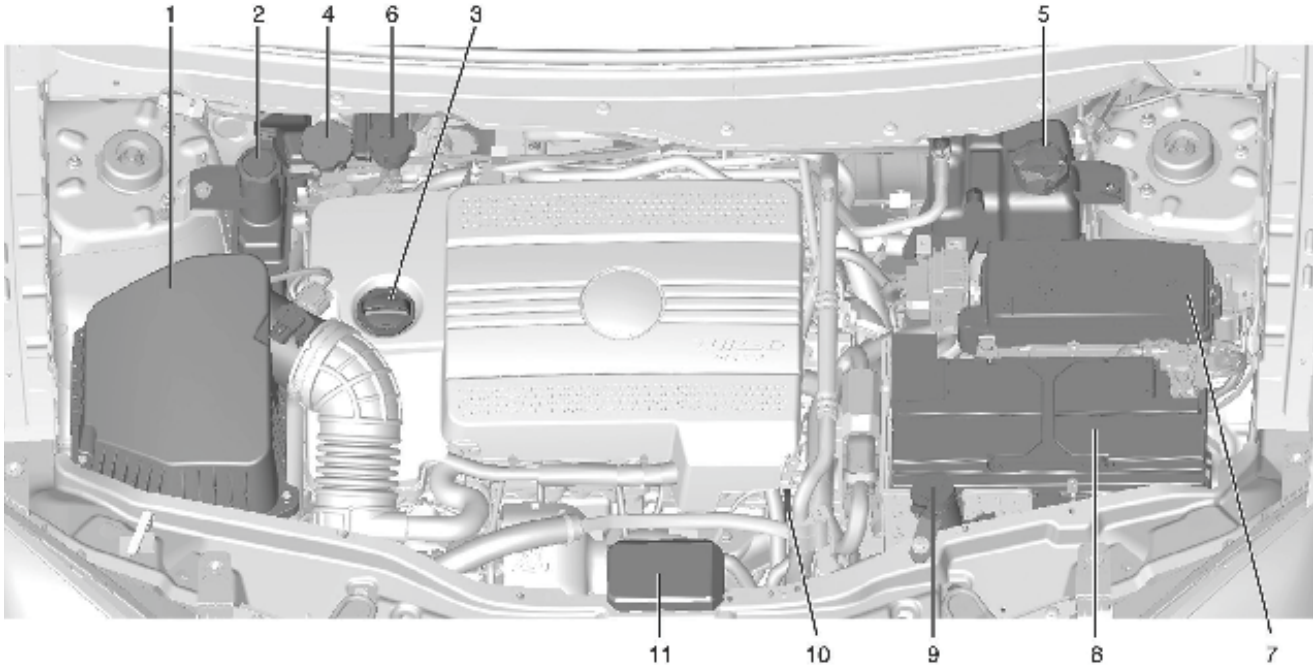
Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is OFF.

The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is OFF.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE COMPARTMENT OVERVIEW

Diesel Engine, Z22D1 (LNQ)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

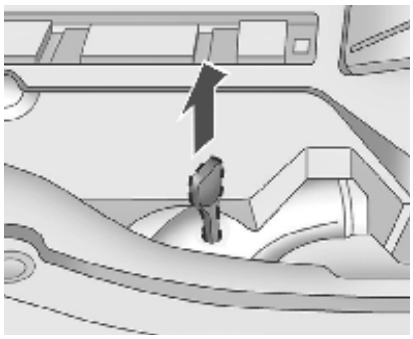
1. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 9-13.
2. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir. See Power Steering Fluid on page 9-20.
3. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under Engine Oil on page 9-8.
4. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See Brakes Fluid on page 9-24.
5. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See “Checking Coolant” under Engine Coolant on page 9-17.
6. Hydraulic Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See Clutch Fluid on page 9-25.
7. Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 9-37.
8. Battery on page 9-26.
9. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Windshield Washer Fluid” under Washer Fluid on page 9-22.
10. Engine Oil Dipstick. See “Checking Engine Oil” under Engine Oil on page 9-6.
11. Auxiliary Engine Room Fuse Block on page 9-42.

ENGINE OIL

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Always use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See “Checking Engine Oil” and “When to Add Engine Oil” in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See Engine Oil Life System on page 9-11.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See “What to Do with Used Oil” in this section.

Checking Engine Oil



Keep your engine properly lubricated by keeping the engine oil at the correct level.

It is normal for an engine to consume some engine oil.

Check the oil level at regular intervals such as every time you stop for fuel.

In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The engine oil dipstick handle is having a yellow color loop. See Engine Compartment Overview on page 9-5 for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

1. Park vehicle on level ground.
2. Turn off the engine and give the oil 10 minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If this is not done, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
3. Pull out the dipstick and wipe it clean.
4. Re-insert dipstick completely.
5. Pull the dipstick out again.
6. Check the oil on the dipstick to make sure it is not contaminated.

7. Check oil level, as shown on the dipstick. Oil should be between MIN and MAX.

   If oil level is not clear, read the opposite side of gauge instead. Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.
8. If the oil level is below MIN, add enough oil of the same grade as is currently in the engine to raise the oil level to MAX. Do not fill over MAX mark.

⚠ Warning

Engine oil is an irritant and, if ingested, can cause illness or death.

Keep out of reach of children.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

⚠ Warning

Adding too much oil can affect engine operation.

Do not allow oil to go above MAX mark on dipstick.

Overfilling reservoir can damage your vehicle by:

Increasing oil consumption.

Building excessive carbon deposits in the engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When To Add Engine Oil

If the oil is below the MIN (minimum) mark, add 1 L (1 qt) of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See "Selecting the Right Engine Oil" in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 10-5.

Add enough oil of the same grade as is currently in the engine to raise the oil level to MAX. Do not fill over MAX mark.

Caution

Do not add too much oil. If the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the upper mark, the engine could be damaged.

See Engine Compartment Overview on page 9-5 for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

Changing Engine Oil and Filter

⚠ Warning

Before attempting to do the work, be sure you are fully acquainted with doing this job. See your CHEVROLET retailer. Otherwise, you could be injured or damage the vehicle.

Engine oil looses its ability to lubricate when contaminated. Be sure to change your engine oil according to maintenance schedule.

Be sure to replace the engine oil filter each time you change engine oil.

Under severe conditions, change oil and oil filter more frequently than is recommended in the standard maintenance schedule.

Severe conditions include, but are not limited to :

- Frequent cold starts.
- Considerable travel in stop-and-go traffic.
- Frequent short trips.
- Frequent driving when outside temperature remains below freezing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Prolonged idling.
- Frequent low-speed driving.
- Driving in dusty areas.

⚠ Warning

Engine oil and its containers can be hazardous to your health.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with engine oil.

Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or hand cleaner after handling engine oil. Also keep this and other toxic materials out of the reach of children.

Engine oil can irritate the skin and can cause illness and even death if swallowed.

Caution

Use of unauthorised or low quality engine oil or chemical engine treatments (additives) can damage the engine and void your vehicle warranty.

Caution

Do not dispose of used engine oil and filter with your household waste.

See your local, authorised waste management facility.

Used engine oil and filter contain harmful elements that may be unhealthy to you and threat to the environment.

Selecting the Right Engine Oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade.

Specification

This vehicle was filled at the factory with dexos approved engine oil.

Ensure that the correct specification of oil is used. See Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 10-5.

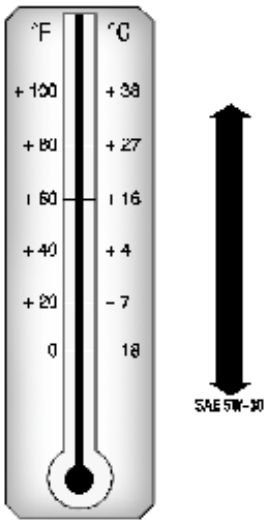
Caution

Use only engine oil that is approved to the dexos specification or equivalent engine oil as defined in Recommended Fluids and Lubricants. Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Viscosity Grade

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for the vehicle.* Do not use other viscosity grade oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40, or 20W-50.



* Cold Temperature Operation: In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below - 29°C (- 20°F), an SAE 0W-30 oil may be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, always select an oil of the correct specification. See “Specification” earlier in this section for more information.

Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The use of engine oil additives could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE OIL LIFE SYSTEM

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions, engine temperature and mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A change engine oil lamp displays. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1,000 kms. It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. Your CHEVROLET retailer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system.

It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of time and oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 15,000 kms since the last oil change.

After you change the oil, the oil life monitor will need to be reset. See CHEVROLET retailer for service.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates when to change your engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Anytime your oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required.

To reset the engine oil life system, do one of the following:

- Using the scan tool

  Your CHEVROLET retailer will reset the system using scan tool after changing the engine oil.

- Using accelerator pedal

1. Remove key from ignition switch for more than one minute. Then turn on ignition key (do not start engine).
2. Perform the following procedure:
   - 2-1. Press the accelerator pedal to the floor and hold it on the floor for 2 seconds.
   - 2-2. Release the accelerator pedal and take your foot off of the pedal for 2 seconds.
   - 2-3. Repeat this sequence (1,2) two more times (for a total of three times) within one minute.

If the change engine oil lamp comes back on and stays one when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system is not reset. Repeat the procedure.

Caution
Remember to reset the engine oil life system whenever the engine oil is changed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RECOMMENDED ENGINE OIL AND MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

Recommended engine oil

See Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 10-5.

Maintenance schedule

See Service Schedules on page 10-2.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID

It is not necessary to check the automatic transmission fluid level.

If you have a problem e.g. leak, have it remedied by a CHEVROLET retailer.

Note

Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle. Always use the fluid listed in Recommended Fluids and Lubricants.

Caution

Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage the vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use the automatic transmission fluid listed in Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 10-5.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID

It is not necessary to check the manual transmission fluid level. If you have a problem e.g. leak, have it remedied by a CHEVROLET retailer.

Note

Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle. Always use the fluid listed in Recommended Fluids and Lubricants.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HYDRAULIC CLUTCH
(Manual Transmission)

It is not necessary to check the clutch fluid level. A clutch fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to the CHEVROLET retailer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

Change the fluid at the intervals listed in Maintenance Schedule, and be sure to use the clutch and transmission fluid listed in Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 10-5.

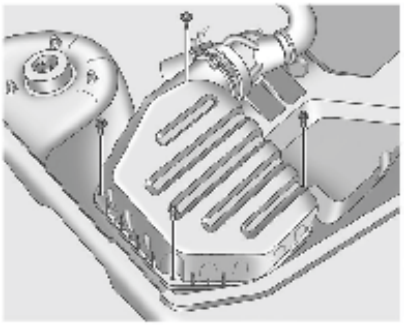
ENGINE AIR CLEANER/ FILTER

See Engine Compartment Overview on page 9-5 for the location of the engine air cleaner/filter.

When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/ Filter

Inspect and replace the air cleaner/ filter at the scheduled maintenance intervals. See the Maintenance Schedule for more information. If you are driving in dusty/ dirty conditions, inspect the filter at every 7,500 kms or 6 months, whichever comes first.

How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



1. Remove the four screws on the sides of the air cleaner cover assembly.
2. Lift the cover to remove the air cleaner element.
3. Remove the air cleaner element from the vehicle.
4. Shake the air cleaner element to remove surface dust.
5. Clean the inside of the air cleaner housing.
6. Cover the open filter housing with a damp cloth while cleaning the element.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7. Clean air filter element by blowing compressed air through it in the direction opposite to normal airflow. If the air filter is dirty, you should replace it.
8. Reverse steps 1-3 to reinstall the engine air cleaner element.

Caution

The engine needs clean air to operate properly.

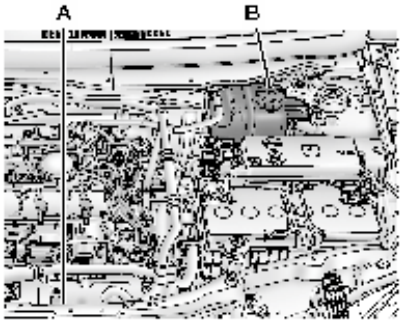
Do not operate your vehicle without the air cleaner element installed.

Driving without the air cleaner element properly installed can damage your engine.

Caution

If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.

COOLING SYSTEM



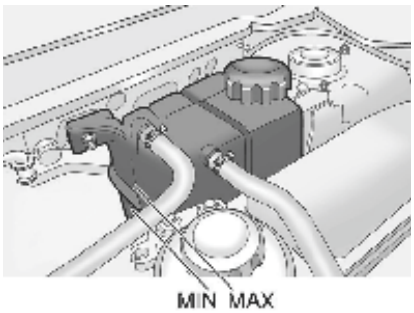
When it is safe to lift the hood:

A. Engine Cooling Fans (Out of View)

B. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap

⚠ Warning

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.



If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is hot, do not do anything else until it cools down. The vehicle should be parked on a level surface.

When the engine is cool, the coolant level should be between the MIN and MAX mark on the coolant reservoir.

If it is not, your vehicle may have a leak at the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump, or somewhere else in the cooling system.

The level of coolant rises as the engine warms and drops back as the engine cools.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine and radiator are hot. It could cause serious injury. The engine must be cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

Caution

Too low a coolant level can cause engine damage.

If there seems to be no leak, with the engine on, check to see if the electric engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, your vehicle needs service. Turn off the engine.

Caution

Engine damage from running the engine without coolant is not covered by the warranty.

Caution

Using coolant other than recommended can cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. Any repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

ENGINE COOLANT

What to use

Your vehicle cooling system is filled with ethylene glycol based long life coolant.

In the correct mixture, this coolant provides the cooling and heating system with excellent protection against corrosion and freezing.

When the engine is cool, the coolant level should be between the MIN and MAX mark on the coolant reservoir. The level of coolant rises as the engine warms and drops back as the engine cools.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

Plain water or the wrong mixture can damage the cooling system.

- Do not use plain water, alcohol or methanol antifreeze in coolant system.
- Use only General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. recommended coolant available with your CHEVROLET retailer.

The engine may overheat or even catch fire.

If the coolant level falls below the MIN mark, refill the reservoir with General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. recommended coolant available with your CHEVROLET retailer. If no antifreeze is available, topping up with water, have the antifreeze concentration checked by your CHEVROLET retailer.

In order to protect your vehicle in extremely cold weather, use mix of 48 percent demineralized water and 52 percent antifreeze.

⚠ Warning

Scalding hot coolant and steam could be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious injury.

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine and radiator are hot.

Caution

Coolant can be hazardous material.

- Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with coolant.
- Clean your skin and nails with soap and water after coming in contact with coolant.
- Keep out of reach of children.
- Coolant can irritate the skin and can cause illness or death if swallowed.

Caution

If an improper coolant mixture is used, the engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts.

If you are adding coolant often, this may be a sign that your engine needs maintenance. Have the CHEVROLET retailer check the vehicle cooling system.

Caution

If extra inhibitors and/or additives are used in the vehicle's cooling system, the vehicle could be damaged. Use only the proper mixture of the engine coolant listed in this manual for the cooling system. See Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 10-5 for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Never dispose of engine coolant by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, or into sewers, streams, or bodies of water. Have the coolant changed by CHEVROLET retailer.

Checking Coolant

The coolant surge tank is located on the passenger side of the engine compartment. See Engine Compartment Overview on page 9-5 for more information on location.

⚠ Warning

Turning the surge tank pressure cap when the engine and radiator are hot can allow steam and scalding liquids to blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the surge tank pressure cap—even a little—when the engine and radiator are hot.

The vehicle must be on a level surface. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the MIN and MAX lines.

Adding Coolant

If more coolant is needed, add the proper coolant mixture at the coolant surge tank, but only when the engine is cool. See below for instructions on "How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank".

⚠ Warning

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.

Coolant contains ethylene glycol, and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

When replacing the pressure cap, make sure it is hand-tight and fully seated.

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

Caution

This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.

If a problem yet has not been found, check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at between the MIN and MAX lines, add only General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. recommended coolant available with your CHEVROLET retailer. At the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before doing it. See Engine Overheating on page 9-19 for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the coolant surge tank pressure cap-even a little-they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and coolant surge tank pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

Caution

It is not needed to add coolant more frequently than the recommended interval. If you are adding coolant often, this may be a sign that your engine needs maintenance.

Contact your CHEVROLET retailer for a check of the cooling system.

Caution

In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts. Use the recommended coolant and the proper coolant mixture.

⚠ Warning

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

1. Remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

   Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise about one-quarter of a turn. If a hiss sound is heard, wait for that to stop. This will allow any pressure still left to be vented out the discharge hose.
2. Then keep turning the pressure cap slowly, and remove it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper coolant between the MIN and MAX lines.
4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until the upper radiator hose can be felt getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper coolant to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches between the MIN and MAX lines.
5. Then replace the pressure cap. Be sure the pressure cap is hand-tight.

Check the level in the surge tank when the cooling system has cooled down. If the coolant is not at the proper level, repeat Steps 1 to 3 and reinstall the pressure cap. If the coolant still is not at the proper level when the system cools down again, see the CHEVROLET retailer.

ENGINE OVERHEATING

There is a coolant temperature warning light on the vehicle instrument panel. See Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light on page 4-25.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge pointer is in the red area, or if you have any other reason to suspect the engine may be overheating:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn off the air conditioning.
3. Let the engine idle for a few minutes.
4. Be sure the cooling fan is operating.

⚠ Warning

If steam is visible, move away from vehicle until engine is cool. Steam can cause serious bums.

Note

Using A/C while driving up long hills or in heavy traffic can cause the engine overheating.

If the fan is not operating and steam is visible, perform the following:

1. Turn off engine.
2. Move away from vehicle without opening the hood.
3. Allow engine to cool.
4. When steam is no longer visible, carefully open hood.
5. Consult a CHEVROLET retailer as soon as possible.

If the fan is operating and steam is not visible, perform the following:

1. Carefully open the hood.
2. Idle engine until cool.
3. Check coolant level.

If the fan is operating, but engine temperature does not fall, perform the following:

1. Stop the engine.
2. Carefully open the hood.
3. Allow the engine to cool.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is low, check for leaks for following components:

1. Radiator.
2. Radiator hoses.
3. Radiator connections.
4. Heater hoses.
5. Heater hose connections.
6. Water pump.

If you find a leak or other damage, or if the coolant is still leaking, consult a CHEVROLET retailer immediately.

⚠ Warning

Scalding hot coolant steam could be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious injury.

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when engine and radiator are hot.

POWER STEERING FLUID

See Engine Compartment Overview on page 9-5 for reservoir location.

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless there is a leak in the system is suspected or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

How to Check Power Steering Fluid

To check the power steering fluid, do the following:

1. Turn the ignition OFF and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
4. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
5. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the engine is hot, the level should be at the hot MAX level. When the engine is cold, the fluid level should be between MIN and MAX on the dipstick.

What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, refer to Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 10-5. Always use the proper fluid.

Caution

Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Always use the correct fluid listed in Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 10-5.

Caution

Extremely small amounts of contamination can cause steering system damage and cause it to not work properly.

Do not allow contaminates to contact the fluid side of the reservior cap or from entering the reservior.

Caution

Do not operate vehicle without the required amount of power steering fluid.

Doing so can damage power steering system of your vehicle, leading to costly repairs.

⚠ Warning

An overflow of the fluid may cause the fluid to burn or discolor paintwork.

Do not overfill the reservoir.

An engine fire can cause personal injuries and damage your vehicle and other property.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

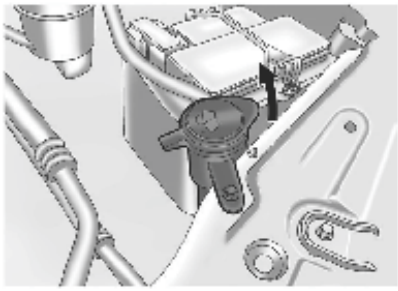
WASHER FLUID

Before you drive, make sure the windshield washer fluid reservoir is at the appropriate level and filled with the correct solution.

In cold weather, do not fill the windshield washer fluid reservoir more than three quarters full.

Washer fluid can freeze to expand in cold temperatures. Filling the reservoir too much does not allow enough expansion room to prevent possible damage to the reservoir.

Adding Windshield Washer Fluid



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See Engine Compartment Overview on page 9-5 for reservoir location.

To refill windshield washer fluid reservoir :

- Use only General Motor India Pvt. Ltd. ready-to-use washer fluid for that purpose.
- Do not use tap water. Minerals present in tap water may plug the windshield washer lines.
- If air temperature is likely to go below freezing, use windshield washer fluid which has sufficient anit-freezing property.

Caution
Do not put water or radiator anti-freeze in windscreen washer reservoir. Water can allow solution to freeze. Frozen solution can damage windshield washer system. Radiator antifreeze can damage windshield washer system and vehicle paint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

- When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.
- Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system.
- Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.
- Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windshield washer. It can damage the windshield washer system and paint.

BRAKES

This vehicle has disc brakes. Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed.

The sound can come and go or be heard all the time the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ Warning

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your CHEVROLET retailer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

Brake Adjustment

Every time the brakes are applied, with or without the vehicle moving, the brakes adjust for wear.

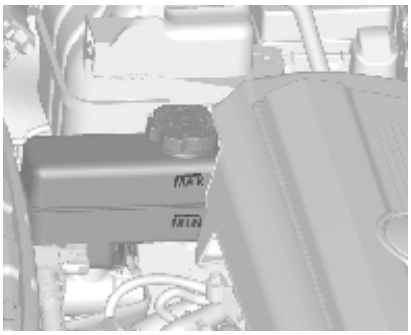
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. The vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When parts of the braking system are replaced, be sure to get new, approved replacement parts.

If this is not done, the brakes might not work properly. For example, installing disc brake pads that are wrong for the vehicle, can change the balance between the front and rear brakes — for the worse. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed.

BRAKES FLUID



The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT 4 brake fluid.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down:

- The brake fluid level goes down because of normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system can also cause a low fluid level. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Do not top off the brake fluid.

Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ Warning

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See Brake System Warning Light on page 4-20.

What to Add

Use only new DOT 4 brake fluid from a sealed container. It is recommended that the brake hydraulic system be flushed and refilled with new DOT 4 fluid at a regular maintenance service every two years. See the maintenance schedule.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

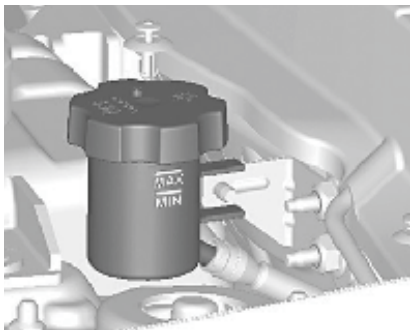
⚠ Warning

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

Caution

- Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.
- If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately.

CLUTCH FLUID



The clutch fluid level must be between the MIN and the MAX marks.

When filling up, ensure maximum cleanliness as contamination of the clutch fluid can lead to clutch system malfunctions. Have the cause of the loss of clutch fluid remedied by a CHEVROLET retailer.

Only use clutch fluid approved for the vehicle.

See Clutch Fluid under Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 10-5.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

Make sure you thoroughly clean around the clutch fluid reservoir cap before removing the cap.

Contamination of the clutch fluid system can affect system performance, leading to costly repairs.

Caution

An overflow of clutch fluid on the engine may cause the fluid to burn.

Do not overfill the reservoir.

An engine fire can cause personal injuries and damage your vehicle and other property.

Caution

Do not dispose of used clutch fluid with your household waste.

Use your local, authorised waste management facility.

Used clutch fluid and their containers are hazardous. They can damage your health and the environment.

Caution

Clutch fluid is harsh and can irritate skin and eyes.

Do not allow the clutch fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If it does, immediately wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water, or hand cleaner.

BATTERY

Refer to the original battery label when a new battery is required. See Engine Compartment Overview on page 9-5 for battery location.

The vehicle battery is maintenance free.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than 4 weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is switched OFF before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery. See Battery Power Protection on page 5-8.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode.

You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See Jump Starting on page 9-61 for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Infrequent Usage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

⚠ Warning

Keep smoking materials away from the battery to avoid flames or sparks when the battery is checked because the explosive gas could be occurred.

If the battery explodes, it can be result in damages of your vehicle and serious injury or death.

Avoid skin contact with battery acid because it can damage by contained highly corrosive and toxic sulfuric acid.

If you accidentally get it on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

Keep batteries out of the reach of children because it contains sulfuric acid and gas.

Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint.

Do not open and tilt the battery.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check the transfer case fluid unless a leak is suspected or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

STARTER SWITCH CHECK

⚠ Warning

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See Parking Brake on page 8-29.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.

3. For automatic transmission vehicles, try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in P (Park) or N (Neutral). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your CHEVROLET retailer for service.

   For manual transmission vehicles, put the shift lever in Neutral, push the clutch pedal down halfway, and try to start the engine. The vehicle should start only when the clutch pedal is pushed down all the way to the floor. If the vehicle starts when the clutch pedal is not pushed all the way down, contact your CHEVROLET retailer for service.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SHIFT LOCK CONTROL FUNCTION CHECK

⚠ Warning

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See Parking Brake on page 8-29.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine OFF, turn the ignition ON, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of P (Park) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your CHEVROLET retailer for service.

PARK BRAKE AND P (PARK) MECHANISM CHECK

⚠ Warning

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your CHEVROLET retailer if service is required.

WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT

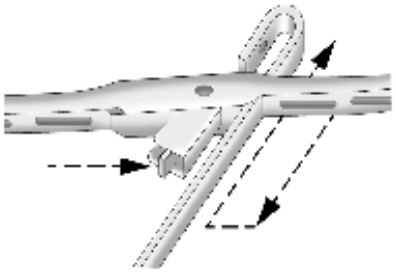
Properly functioning windshield wipers are essential for clean vision and safe driving. Regularly check the condition of the wiper blades. Replace hard, brittle or cracked blades or those that smear dirt on the windshield.

Foreign material on the windshield or wiper blades can reduce the effectiveness of the wipers. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the windshield and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent. Rinse them thoroughly with water.

Repeat the process, if necessary. There is no way to remove traces of silicone from glass. Therefore never apply silicone polish or wax polish to your vehicle's windshield or you will get streak, blade chatter or blade noise that impairs the dirver's vision.

Do not use solvents, gasoline, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean wipers. These are harsh and can damage the blades and painted surfaces.

Replacing Wiper Blades



1. Press and hold the wiper blade retaining clip.
2. Pull the wiper blade off the wiper arm.
3. Install a new wiper blade onto the arm.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HEADLAMP AIMING

Headlamp aim has been preset and should need no further adjustment. If the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected. If adjustment to the headlamps is necessary, see your CHEVROLET retailer.

BULB REPLACEMENT

Use only the same bulb type for replacement. See Bulb Specifications on page 11-5.

For any bulb-changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your CHEVROLET retailer.

HALOGEN BULBS

⚠ Warning

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

Switch OFF the ignition and switch OFF the relevant switch or close the doors.

Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

Note

After driving in heavy rain or washing, some exterior lamp lenses could appear frosty.

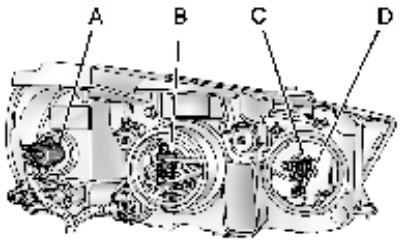
This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside.

This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during the rain and doesn't indicate a problem with your vehicle.

If the water leaks into the light bulb circuitry, have the vehicle checked, by your CHEVROLET retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HEADLAMPS, FRONT TURN SIGNAL AND PARKING LAMPS



Passenger Side Shown, Driver Side Similar

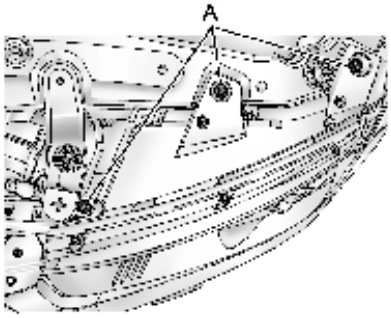
A. Turn Signal Lamp

B. Low-Beam Headlamp

C. High-Beam Headlamp

D. Parking Lamp

Headlamps

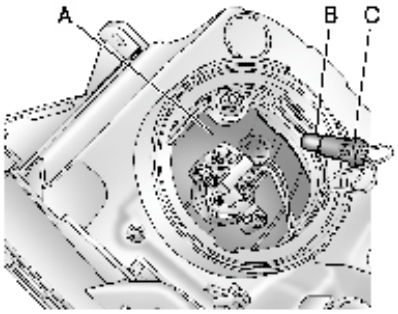


To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the hood. See Hood on page 9-3.
2. Remove the three screws (A) retaining the headlamp assembly.
3. Pull the headlamp assembly straight forward releasing the retaining studs from the grommets.
4. Remove the dust cover from the back of the headlamp housing by turning counterclockwise a quarter turn.
5. Remove the bulb socket from the headlamp by releasing the spring clamp and pulling the socket straight out of the lamp assembly.
6. Remove the bulb from the socket.
7. Install the new bulb in the socket.
8. Install the bulb socket into the lamp assembly and attach the spring clamp.
9. Install the dust cover in the back of the headlamp housing by turning clockwise a quarter turn.
10. Reverse the steps to install the headlamp assembly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

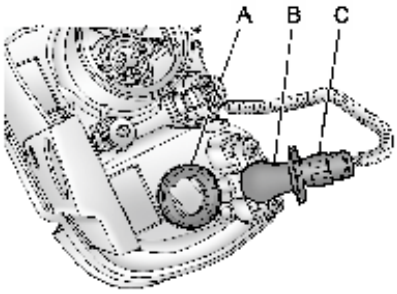
Parking Lamps



To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Remove the headlamp assembly.
2. Remove the dust cover from the back of the headlamp housing by turning counterclockwise a quarter turn.
3. Turn the bulb socket (C) counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly (A).
4. Pull the bulb (B) straight out from the socket (C).
5. Push the new bulb into the socket (C) and reinstall the socket into the headlamp assembly (A) by turning it clockwise.
6. Install the headlamp assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lamps

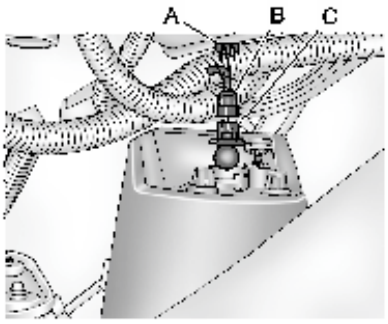


To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Remove the headlamp assembly.
2. Turn the bulb socket (C) counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly (A).
3. Remove the bulb (B) from the socket (C) by turning counterclockwise and pulling straight out.
4. Install the new bulb into the socket (C) and reinstall the socket into the headlamp assembly (A) by turning it clockwise.
5. Install the headlamp assembly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

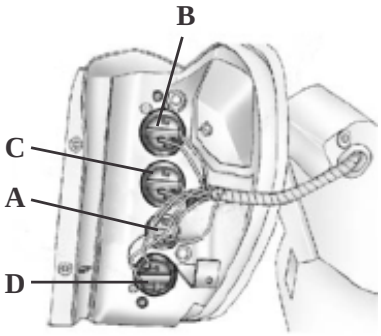
FOG LAMPS



To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the hood. See Hood on page 9-3.
2. Remove the headlamp assembly. See Headlamps, Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps on page 9-31.
3. Remove the connector retaining tab (A).
4. Disconnect the wiring harness connector from the bulb (C) by pressing the connector release (B) and pulling straight back.
5. Remove the old bulb from the from the fog lamp assembly by squeezing the bulb release tabs and pulling straight out.
6. Push the new bulb into the bulb assembly until it locks into place.
7. Install the wiring harness connector to the bulb. Be sure the connector release (B) locks into place.
8. Install the connector retaining tab (A).
9. Replace the headlamp assembly.

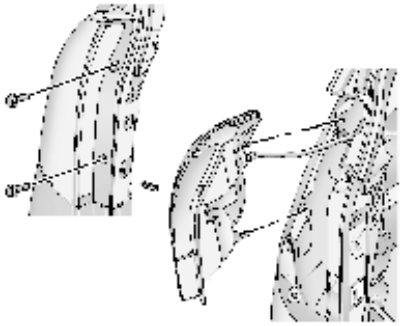
TAIL LAMPS, TURN SIGNAL, STOP LAMPS, REAR FOG LAMPS AND BACK-UP LAMPS



Passenger Side Shown, Drive Side Similar

A. Back-Up Lamp
B. Stoplamp/Taillamp
C. Turn Signal Lamp
D. Rear Fog Lamp

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



To replace one of these lamps:

1. Open the tailgate. See Tailgate on page 1-7.
2. Remove the two screws retaining the taillamp assembly in place.
3. Pull the lamp assembly straight rearward releasing the retaining studs from the grommets.
4. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it.
5. Turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it from the bulb socket.
6. Install the new bulb into the bulb socket.
7. Turn the bulb socket clockwise to reinstall.
8. Install the lamp assembly into the vehicle. Make sure to align the retaining studs to the grommets.
9. Install two screws to secure lamp assembly in place on the vehicle.

SIDE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS

If the side turn signal lamp in the outside rearview mirror is not operated, have the checked by CHEVROLET retailer.

CENTER HIGH-MOUNTED STOPLAMP (CHMSL)

If the CHMSL is not operated, have the checked by CHEVROLET retailer.

LICENSE PLATE LAMP

The licence plate lamps for this vehicle are on the trunk lid.

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the tailgate. See Tailgate on page 1-7.
2. Remove two screws and the lamp assembly.
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the lamp assembly.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the bulb socket.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Push the replacement bulb straight into the bulb socket and turn the bulb socket clockwise to install it into the lamp assembly.
6. Install the bulb socket back into the lamp housing.
7. Install the lamp cover using two screws.

INTERIOR LAMPS

Courtesy Lamps

1. To remove it, prise the opposite side of the lamp switch using a flat-blade screwdriver.

   (Be careful not to make scratches.)
2. Remove the bulb.
3. Replace the bulb.
4. Reinstall the lamp assembly.

⚠ Warning

The same rating of the bulb to be used during replacement and any usage of higher wattage bulbs can cause thermal issues such as melting of lamp housing and its surrounding parts. Warranty would be void if higher wattage bulbs are being used.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM OVERLOAD

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect power devices in the vehicle.

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

Windshield Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windshield wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage.

Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windshield before using the windshield wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUSES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

Data on the replacement fuse must match the data on the defective fuse.

Before replacing a fuse, turn off the respective switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire. Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.

Some functions are protected by several fuses.

Fuses may also be inserted without existence of a function.

Note

Not all fuse box descriptions in this manual may apply to your vehicle.

When inspecting the fuse box refer to the fuse box label.

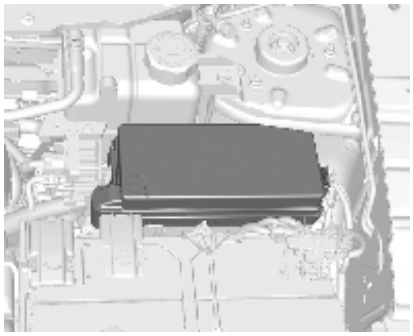
Fuse Extractor

A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.

Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw fuse.

To identify and check fuses, circuit breakers, and relays, see Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 9-37 and Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 9-40.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BLOCK

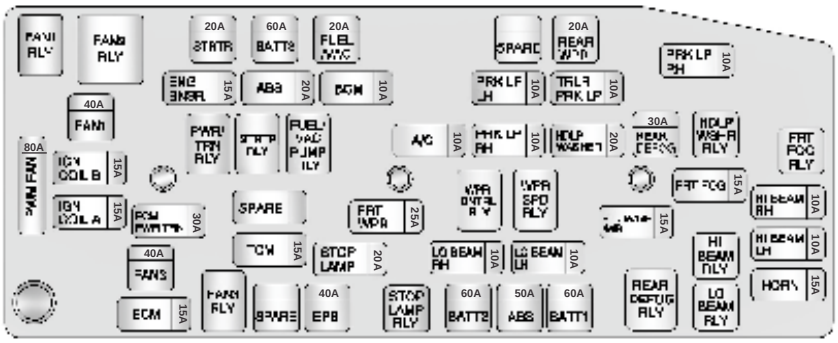


The engine compartment fuse block is located on the right side of the engine compartment, near the battery.

Caution
Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Compartment Fuse Block



The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
ABS	Antilock Brake System
A/C	Heater, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning System

Fuses	Usage
BATT1	Instrument Panel Fuse Block Main Feed 1
BATT2	Instrument Panel Fuse Block Main Feed 2
BATT3	Instrument Panel Fuse Block Main Feed 3

Fuses	Usage
BCM	Body Control Module
ECM	Engine Control Module
ECM PWR TRN	Engine Control Module/Powertrain
ENG SNSR	Miscellaneous Engine Sensors
EPB	Electric Parking Brake
FAN1	Cooling Fan 1
FAN3	Cooling Fan 3
FRT FOG	Front Fog Lamps
FRT WPR	Front Wiper Motor
FUEL/VAC	Fuel Pump/ Vacuum Pump
HDLP WASHER	Headlamp Washer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses	Usage
HI BEAM LH	High-Beam Headlamp (Left)
HI BEAM RH	High-Beam Headlamp (Right)
HORN	Horn
HTD WASH/MIR	Heated Washer Fluid/Heated Mirrors
IGN COIL A	Ignition Coil A
IGN COIL B	Ignition Coil B
LO BEAM LH	Low-Beam Headlamp (Left)
LO BEAM RH	Low-Beam Headlamp (Right)
PRK LP LH	Parking Lamps (Left)
PRK LP RH	Parking Lamps(Right)
PRK LP RH*	Parking Lamps (Right) (Europe Park Lamps)

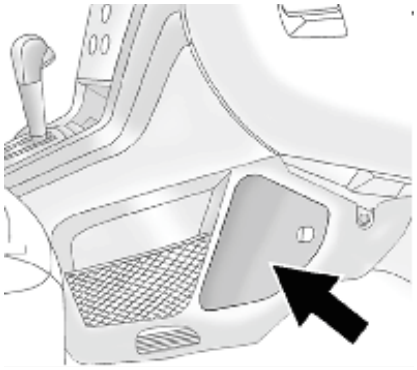
Fuses	Usage
PWM FAN	Pulse Width Modulation Fan
REAR DEFOG	Rear Window Defogger
REAR WPR	Rear Wiper Motor
SPARE	Not Used
STOP LAMP	Stoplamps
STRTR	Starter
TCM	Transmission Control Module
TRLR PRK LP	Trailer Parking Lamps

Relays	Usage
FAN1 RLY	Cooling Fan 1
FAN2 RLY	Cooling Fan 2
FAN3 RLY	Cooling Fan 3

Relays	Usage
FRT FOG RLY	Front Fog Lamps
FUEL/VAC PUMP RLY	Fuel Pump/Vacuum Pump Relay
HDLP WSHR RLY	Headlamp Washer
HI BEAM RLY	High-Beam Headlamps
LO BEAM RLY	Low-Beam Headlamps
PWR/ TRN RLY	Powertrain
REAR DEFOG RLY	Rear Window Defogger
STOP LAMP RLY	Stoplamps
STRTR RLY	Starter
WPR CNTRL RLY	Wiper Control
WPR SPD RLY	Wiper Speed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

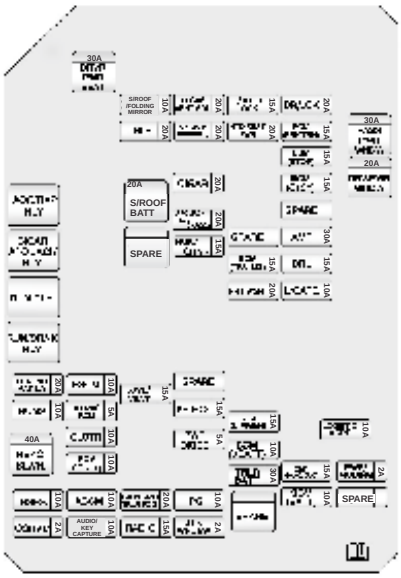
INSTRUMENT PANEL FUSE BLOCK



The instrument panel fuse block is located on the driver side of the lower console.

Pull the latch of the fuse box cover straight back to access the fuses.

Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The vehicle may not have all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
AMP	Amplifier
APO JACK (CONSOLE)	Auxiliary Power Outlet Jack
APO JACK (REAR CARGO)	Auxiliary Power Outlet Jack Rear Cargo
AWD/VENT	All-Wheel Drive/ Ventilation
BCM (CTSY)	Body Control Module (Courtesy)
BCM (DIMMER)	Body Control Module (Dimmer)
BCM (INT LIGHT) TRLR FOG	Body Control Module (Interior Light), Trailer Fog Lamps
BCM PRK/TRN)	Body Control Module (Parking/Turn Signal)
BCM (STOP)	Body Control Module (Stop Lamp)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses	Usage
BCM (TRN SIG)	Body Control Module (Turn Signal)
BCM (VBATT)	Body Control Module (Battery Voltage)
CIGAR	Cigarette
CIM	Communications Integration Module
CLSTR	Instrument Cluster
DRL	Daytime Running Lamps
DR/LCK	Driver Door Lock
DRVR PWR SEAT	Driver Power Seat
DRV/ PWR WNDW	Driver Power Window
F/DOOR LOCK	Fuel Door Lock
FRT WSR	Front Washer

Fuses	Usage
FSCM	Fuel System Control Module
FSCM/ VENT SOL	Fuel System Control Module,Vent Solenoid
HEATING MAT SW	Heating Mat Switch
HTD SEAT PWR	Heated Seat Power
HVAC BLWR	Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning Blower
IPC	Instrument Panel Cluster
ISRVM/RCM	Inside Rearview Mirror/Remote Compass Module
AUDIO/ KEY CAPTURE	Audio/ Key Capture
L/GATE	Tail Gate
LOGISTIC MODE	Logistic Mode

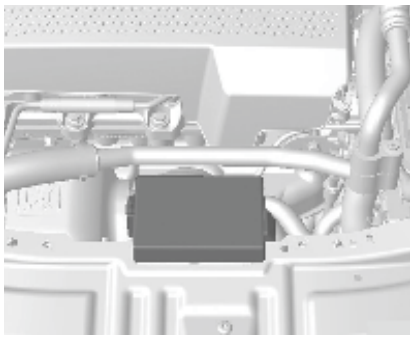
Fuses	Usage
OSRVM	Outside Rear View Mirror
PASS PWR WNDW	Passenger Power Window
PWR DIODE	Power Diode
PWR MODING	Power Moding
RADIO	Radio
RR FOG	Rear Defogger
RUN 2	Power Battery Key On Run
RUN/CRNK	Run Crank
SDM (BATT)	Safety Diagnosis Module (Battery)
SDM (IGN 1)	Safety Diagnosis Module (Ignition 1)
SPARE	Spare
S/ROOF/ FOLDING MIRROR	Sunroof/ Folding Mirror

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses	Usage
S/ROOF BATT	Sunroof Battery
SSPS	Speed Sensitive Power Steering
STR/WHL SW	Steering Wheel Switch
TRLR	Trailer
TRLR BATT	Trailer Battery
XBCM	Export Body Control Module
XM/HVAC/ DLC	Xm™ Satellite Radio (If Equipped)/Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning/ Data Link Connection

Relays	Usage
ACC/RAP RLY	Accessory/Run Accessory Power
CIGAR APO JACK RLY	Cigarette and Auxiliary Power Outlet
RUN/ CRNK RLY	Run/Crank
RUN RLY	Run

AUXILIARY ENGINE ROOM FUSE BLOCK



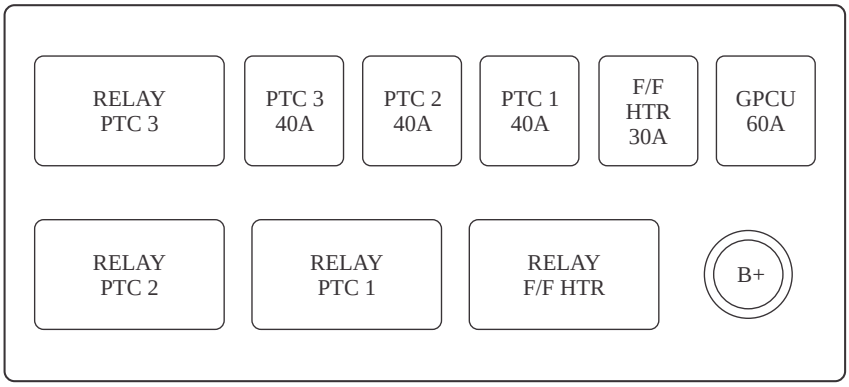
Auxiliary engine room fuse block is located in the centre of the front panel.

Note

Not all fuse block descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auxiliary Engine Room Fuse Block



WHEELS AND TIRES

TIRES

Factory-fitted tires are matched to this vehicle, offering the most effective combination of ride comfort, tread life and performance.

⚠ Warning

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.

  Overloading the tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. There could be a blowout and a serious crash. See Vehicle Load Limits on page 8-9.
- Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting crash could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when the tires are cold.

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

- Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact - such as when hitting a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn or old tires can cause a crash. If the tread is badly worn, replace them.
- Replace any tires that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.
- Improperly repaired tires can cause a crash. Only the retailer or an authorized tire service center should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tires.
- Do not spin the tires in excess of 56 km/h (35 mph) on slippery surfaces such as snow, mud, ice, etc. Excessive spinning may cause the tires to explode.

Driving over sharp objects can damage the tires and wheels. If some objects are unavoidable, drive over them slowly and at a right angle, if possible.

When parking, avoid making contact with the curb.

WINTER TIRES

Consider installing winter tires on the vehicle if frequent driving on snow or ice covered roads is expected. All season tires provide good overall performance on most surfaces but they may not offer the traction you would like or the same level of performance as winter tires on snow or ice covered roads.

Winter tires, in general, are designed for increased traction on snow and ice covered roads. With winter tires, there may be decreased dry road traction, increased road noise, and shorter tread life. After changing to winter tires, be alert for changes in vehicle handling and braking.

See your CHEVROLET retailer for details regarding winter tire availability and proper tire selection. Using incorrect winter tires may adversely affect Stability System Performance. Also, see Buying New Tires on page 9-50.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If using snow tires:

- Use them on all four wheels.
- Never exceed the maximum speed specified by the tire manufacturer.
- Always use the tire pressure specified by the tire manufacturer.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as the original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, Y, and ZR speed rated tires. If winter tires with a lower speed rating are chosen, never exceed the tire's maximum speed capability.

Tire Designations

E.g. **215/60 R 16 95 H**

215 : Tyre width, mm

60 : Cross-section ratio (tire height to tire width), %

R : Belt type : Radial

RF : Type : Run Flat

16 : Wheel diameter, inches

95 : Load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 690 kg

H : Speed code letter

Speed code letter:

Q : up to 160 km/h (100mph)

S : up to 180 km/h (112mph)

T : up to 190 km/h (118mph)

H : up to 210 km/h (130mph)

V : up to 240 km/h (150mph)

W : up to 270 km/h (168mph)

TIRE PRESSURE

Check the pressure of cold tires at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel.

Unscrew the valve cap.

The tire pressure label is on the driver's door frame.

The tire pressure data refers to cold tires. It applies to summer and winter tires.

Always inflate the spare tire to the pressure specified for full load.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Incorrect tire pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tire wear.

Under inflation | Correct inflation | Over inflation

Caution

Neither tire underinflation nor overinflation is good.

Underinflated tires, or tires that do not have enough air, can result in:

- Tire overloading and overheating which could lead to a blowout.
- Premature or irregular wear.
- Poor handling.
- Reduced fuel economy.

Overinflated tires, or tires that have too much air, can result in:

- Unusual wear.
- Poor handling.
- Rough ride.
- Needless damage from road hazards.

⚠ Warning

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tire warmup and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tire blow-out at high speeds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Size	Recommended Cold Tire Inflation			
	Front		Rear	
	Less than four occupants	More than five occupants with towing a trailer	Less than four occupants	More than five occupants with towing a trailer
235/65R17 (Regular)	35 psi (240 kPa)	35 psi (240 kPa)	35 psi (240 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
215/70R16 (Spare)	35 psi (240 kPa)		35 psi (240 kPa)	

When to Check

The tire pressure should be checked each time you fill the fuel tank or at least every 14 days using a tire pressure gauge.

Check the inflation pressure when the tires are cold. Warm tires will produce an inaccurate reading. Tires can become warm after driving more than 1.6 km (1 mile) and stay warm for up to three hours after stopping.

How to Check

Use an accurate tire pressure gauge to check the pressure of the tires when they are cold. Securely retighten the valve caps after checking the tire inflation pressure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TREAD DEPTH

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

Tires should be replaced for safety reasons at a tread depth of 2-3 mm (4mm for winter tires).

The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels.

Tires age, even if they are not used. We recommend tire replacement every 6 years.

TIRE INSPECTION

Regularly inspect the vehicle's tires, including the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, for signs of wear or damage. See When It Is Time for New Tires on page 9-50 for more information.

Always remove the tires if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.
- Check the wheels for damage.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire defects including those above can cause loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in a possible collision.

If the tires or wheels are damaged or show abnormal wear see your CHEVROLET retailer.

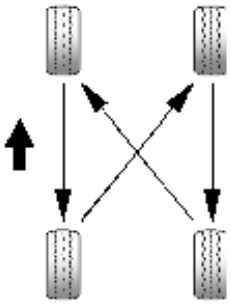
For reasons of safety, tyres should be replaced when their tread depth has worn down to 2 to 3 mm (winter tyres : 4mm).

⚠ Warning

Use the recommended wheels and wheel lug nuts/bolts only.

Otherwise, you can lose control of your vehicle and cause a collision that can result in injuries or damage to your vehicle or other property.

TIRE ROTATION



Normally, the front tires wear faster than the rear tires.

To prolong the life of the tires and avoid uneven treadwear:

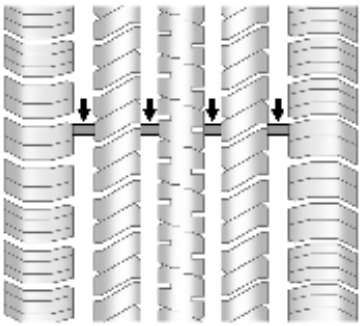
1. Rotate the tires using the rotation pattern shown if the front tires show greater wear than the rear tires.
2. Maintain the correct tire pressure.
3. Tighten the lug nuts/bolts.

Lightly coat the center of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tire rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up.

Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WHEN IT IS TIME FOR NEW TIRES



Factors such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions affect the wear rate of the tires.

Treadwear indicators are one way to tell when it is time for new tires. Treadwear indicators appear when the tires have only 1.6mm (1/16 in) or less of tread remaining. See Tire Inspection on page 9-48 and Tire Rotation on page 9-49 for more information.

The rubber in tires ages over time. This also applies for the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, even if it is never used. Multiple conditions including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance affect how fast aging takes place. Tires will typically need to be replaced due to wear before they may need to be replaced due to age. Consult the tire manufacturer for more information on when tires should be replaced.

Tires age when stored normally mounted on a parked vehicle. Park a vehicle that will be stored for at least a month in a cool, dry, clean area away from direct sunlight to slow aging. This area should be free of grease, gasoline, or other substances that can deteriorate rubber.

Parking for an extended period can cause flat spots on the tires that may result in vibrations while driving. When storing a vehicle for at least a month, remove the tires or raise the vehicle to reduce the weight from the tires.

BUYING NEW TIRES

This vehicle was delivered with radial tires. We recommend using radials of the same size, design, tread wear, temperature and speed rating when replacing them.

⚠ Warning

Tires could explode during improper service. Attempting to mount or dismount a tire could cause injury or death. Only your CHEVROLET retailer or authorized tire service center should mount or dismount the tires.

⚠ Warning

Mixing tires of different sizes, brands, or types may cause loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in a crash or other vehicle damage. Use the correct size, brand, and type of tires on all wheels.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIFFERENT SIZE TIRES AND WHEELS

If wheels or tires are installed that are a different size than the original equipment wheels and tires, vehicle performance, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover may be affected. If the vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, and electronic stability control, the performance of these systems can also be affected.

⚠ Warning

If different sized wheels are used, there may not be an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. This increases the chance of a crash and serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for the vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See Buying New Tires on page 9-50 and Accessories and Modifications on page 9-2.

WHEEL ALIGNMENT AND TIRE BALANCE

The tires and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing will not be necessary on a regular basis. However, check the alignment if there is unusual tire wear or if the vehicle is pulling to one side or the other. If the vehicle vibrates when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels might need to be rebalanced. See your CHEVROLET retailer for proper diagnosis.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WHEEL REPLACEMENT

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it. Some aluminum wheels can be repaired. See your service partner if any of these conditions exist.

Your CHEVROLET retailer will know the kind of wheel that is needed.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset, and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

Replace wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, with new GM original equipment parts.

⚠ Warning

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of the vehicle. Tires can lose air, and cause loss of control, causing a crash. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

Caution

The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ Warning

Replacing a wheel with a used one is dangerous. How it has been used or how far it has been driven may be unknown. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. When replacing wheels, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TIRES CHAINS

Before fitting chains, remove wheel covers to avoid scratching them.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use tire chains on the front tire of 16 inch size. Do not use chains on the other tire size.
- Re-tighten the chains after driving about 1 km (.5 miles).

Caution
Use of snow chains could adversely affect vehicle handling. Do not exceed 50km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower. Avoid sharp turns, bumps and holes. Avoid locked-wheel braking.

Note

SAE class S-type chains are the proper type for your vehicle.

Always drive slowly when you are using tyre chains.

If you hear the chains contacting the vehicle, stop and re-tighten the chains.

If the contact continues, slow down until it stops.

IF A TIRE GOES FLAT

It is unusual for a tire to blow out while driving, especially if the tires are maintained properly. See Tires on page 9-43. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there is ever a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Driving on a flat tire will cause permanent damage to the tire. Re-inflating a tire after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tire that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your CHEVROLET retailer or an authorized tire service center repair or replace the flat tire as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning

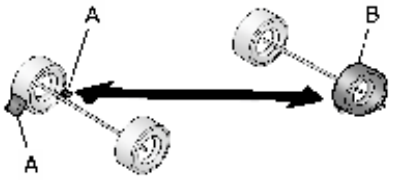
Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place, well off the road, if possible. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See Hazard Warning Flashers on page 5-3.

⚠ Warning

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall causing injury or death. Find a level place to change the tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First) or R (Reverse).
3. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
4. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.
5. Place wheel blocks on both sides of the tire at the opposite corner of the tire being changed.



This vehicle may come with a jack and spare tire. To use the jacking equipment to change a spare tire safely, follow the instructions below. Then see Tire Changing on page 9-55.

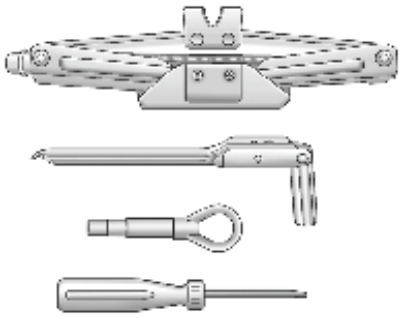
When the vehicle has a flat tire (B), use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks (A).

A. Wheel Block

B. Flat Tire

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TIRE CHANGING

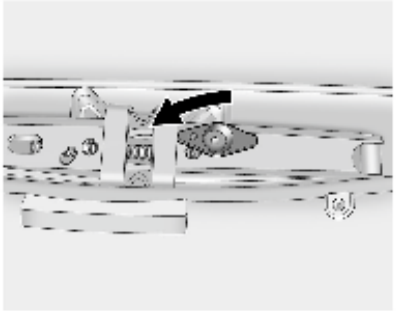


In some models, jack handle type is applied to the vehicle.

The actual tools in the vehicle may differ from the description.

⚠ Warning

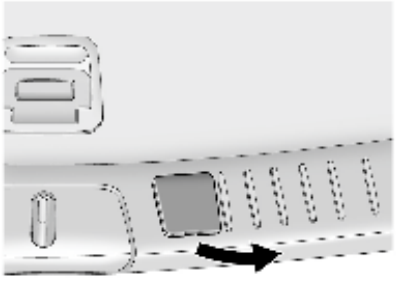
Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.



The jack and tools are located in the luggage compartment and below the rear bumper.

To remove the jack and tools:

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Lift the floor cover to locate the wing bolt.
3. Turn the wing bolt counterclockwise to remove it from the jack.
4. Remove the jack and tool bag.
5. Remove the straps holding the tool bag.
6. Remove the tools from the bag.



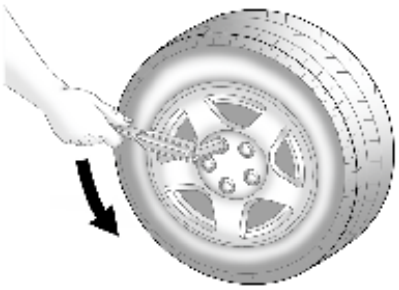
To remove the spare tire:

1. Use a flat-blade screwdriver to remove the hole cover above the rear bumper.
2. Use the wheel wrench to loosen the bolt to lower the spare tire.
3. Unhook the cable on the tire carrier located below the rear bumper.
4. Remove the spare tire. See Compact Spare Tire on page 9-60.

Stow the jack and tools securely so they do not rattle while the car is moving.

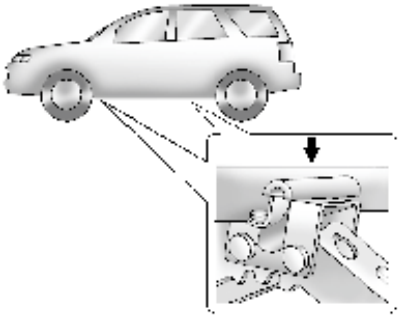
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire



1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See If a Tire Goes Flat on page 9-53.

   Call CHEVROLET retailer for assistance if it is not safe to jack the vehicle or change the tire safely.
2. Use the wheel wrench or screwdriver to remove the wheel cover if there is one.
3. Use the wheel wrench to loosen all the wheel nuts. Do not remove any of the nuts until the wheel is off the ground.
4. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack bolt head and rotate the wheel wrench clockwise to lift the head a little.



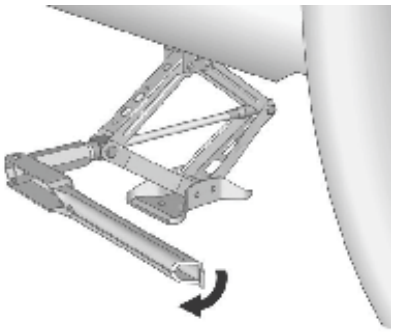
5. There are notches under the doors at the front and rear of the vehicle.

   Position the jack vertically at the front or rear jacking notch closest to the wheel being changed. Make sure all of the jack lift head is touching the jacking flange under the body. Do not place the jack under a body panel. The lower body panel has an arrow to aid in locating the jacking location.
6. Put the compact spare tire near you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Raising the vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.



7. Turn the wheel wrench or jack handle clockwise until the lifting head fits firmly into the appropriate notch and the tire is off the ground about 2.5 cm (1 in).

   Do not raise the vehicle more than it is necessary to change the tire.

Caution

As the jack begins to raise the vehicle, make sure jack is properly placed so it will not slip.

⚠ Warning

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

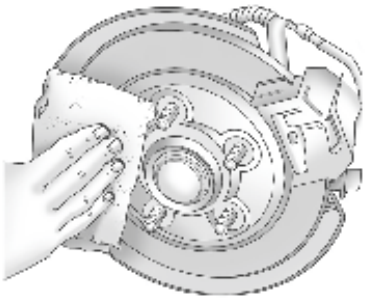
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

Caution

Make sure that the jack lift head is in the correct position or you may damage your vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.



8. Remove all the wheel nuts.
9. Remove the flat tire.
10. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.
11. Install the spare tire.

⚠ Warning

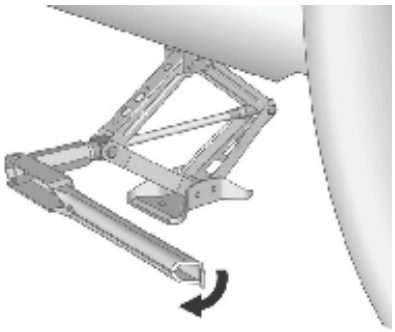
Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

12. Place the compact spare tire on the wheel-mounting surface.
13. Reinstall the wheel nuts. Tighten each nut by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.

⚠ Warning

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



14. Turn the wheel wrench or jack handle counterclockwise to lower the vehicle to ground.

⚠ Warning

Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off. The wheel nuts should be tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification after replacing.

Caution

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification.

15. Tighten the wheel nuts to 140 Nm (100 lb-ft) in a crisscross sequence, as shown.
16. Install the wheel cover if there is one.
17. Lower the jack all the way and remove it from under the vehicle.
18. Tighten the bolts firmly with the wheel wrench or jack handle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STORING A FLAT TIRE AND TOOLS

⚠ Warning

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

1. Hang the tire carrier on the support rod and tighten the bolt in the hole above the rear bumper to raise the tire carrier.
2. Hook the cable and reinstall the hole cover in its original position.
3. Secure the jack and tools in their original location.
4. Secure the flat tire in the luggage compartment.

   Do not store the flat tire below the rear bumper where the spare tire was located.

The compact spare is for temporary use only. Replace the compact spare tire with a full-size tire as soon as possible.

COMPACT SPARE TIRE

⚠ Warning

Driving with more than one compact spare tire at a time could result in loss of braking and handling. This could lead to a crash and you or others could be injured. Use only one compact spare tire at a time.

The compact spare tire was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, but it can lose air after a time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when driving with a spare tire.

The spare tire is for temporary emergency use only. Replace it with a regular tire as soon as possible.

Do not use the temporary spare on other vehicles.

Caution

When the compact spare is installed, do not take the vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails which can damage the tire, wheel, and other parts of the vehicle.

Do not mix the temporary spare tire or wheel with other wheels or tires. They will not fit. Keep the spare tire and its wheel together.

Caution

Tire chains will not fit the compact spare. Using them can damage the vehicle and can damage the chains too. Do not use tire chains on the compact spare.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

JUMP STARTING

JUMP STARTING

Caution

Do not try to start vehicle by pushing or pulling it.

This can damage catalytic converter and automatic transaxle and may cause personal injury.

For more information about the vehicle battery, see Battery on page 9-26.

If the vehicle battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ Warning

Batteries can explode. You could be burnt by battery acid and electrical short could injure you or damage the vehicles.

- Do not expose battery to flames or sparks.
- Do not lean over battery while jump starting vehicle.
- Do not allow cable terminals to touch each other.
- Wear eye protection when working near any battery.
- Do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin, fabric, or painted surfaces.
- Make sure battery providing jump start has the same voltage as the battery receiving the jump.
- Do not disconnect discharged battery from vehicle.

Caution

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the warranty.

Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Caution

Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting. If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged.

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put the transmission in P (Park) before setting the parking brake.

3. Turn OFF the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlet. Turn off the radio and all lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks, helping save both batteries and the radio.
4. Open the hood on the other vehicle and locate the positive (+) and negative (-) terminal locations on that vehicle.

   Open the hood on your vehicle and find the positive (+) and negative (-) terminal locations.

See Engine Compartment Overview on page 9-5 for more information on location of the Battery.

Caution

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Using an open flame near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a spark. The vehicles could also be damaged.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (-) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (-) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not connect positive (+) to negative (-) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts. Do not connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.

6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

8. Now connect the black negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (-) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (-) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (-) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.

9. Connect the other end of the negative (-) cable away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move. The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.

10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.

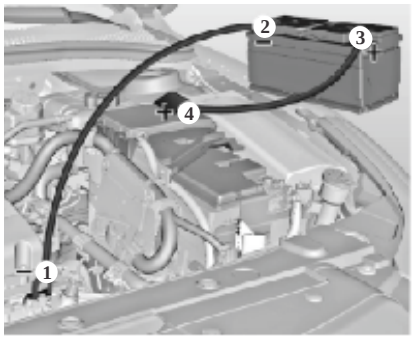
11. Press the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter to disarm your security system, if equipped.

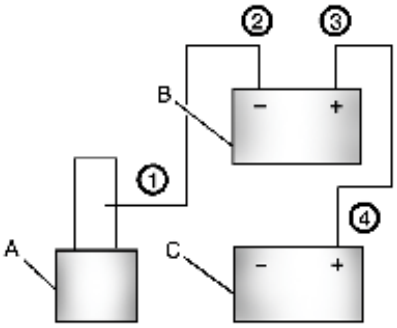
12. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.





Jumper Cable Removal

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (-) Terminal

B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Remote Negative (-) Terminals

C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

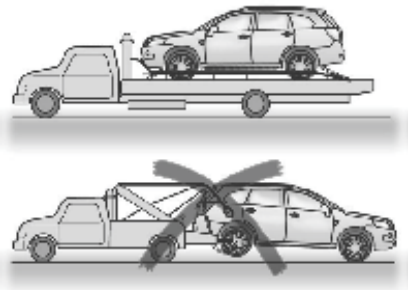
To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles, do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (-) cable from the vehicle that had the dead battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (-) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the underhood fuse block cover to its original position, if applicable.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

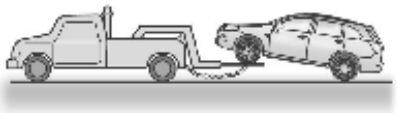
TOWING

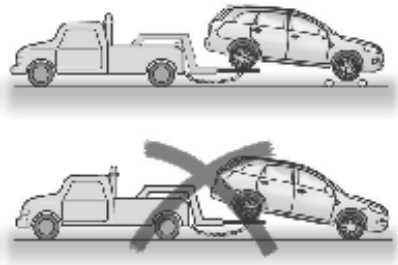
TOWING THE VEHICLE



If you need to have your vehicle towed, please use our service network or professional towing company.

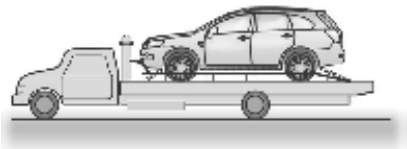
The best method is to have the vehicle transported using a recovery vehicle.





If towing by 2 wheels, lift the front driving wheels and tow with the front tires locked.

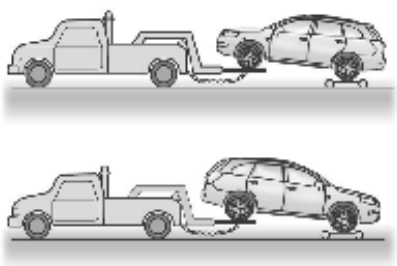
Towing The Vehicle With All Wheel Drive System



Flat-bed equipment is the best method of towing the vehicle to be equipped with all wheel drive (AWD) system to avoid any damages.

If not available to use a flat-bed equipment, use a towing dolly to tow the vehicle as illustrated below.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Caution

If you tow the vehicle equipped with the all wheel drive (AWD) system while front or rear tyres are rolling on the road, the drive system in the vehicle could be severely damaged.

Never tow your vehicle with the front and rear tyres on the road.

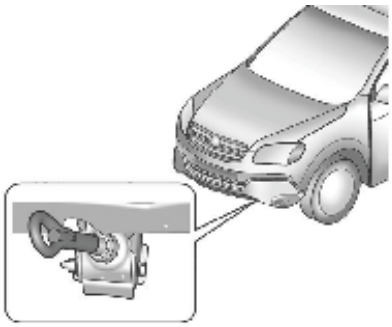
Please observe the following procedures when towing a vehicle:

- No passenger should remain in the vehicle being towed.
- Release the parking brake of the towed vehicle and place the transmission gear in neutral.
- Switch on the emergency warning lights.
- Keep the speed limits.

EMERGENCY TOWING

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed by a cable secured to the emergency towing eye.

Front Towing Eye



The front towing eye is provided under the front bumper. Remove air dam of passenger's side and attach towing eye. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced road for a short distance and at low speeds. Also the wheels, axles, drive train, steering and brakes must be all in a good condition.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

When towing the vehicle with a tow rope, the vehicle can be damaged.

To reduce damage:

- Use towing eye only if no other towing equipment is available.
- Only tow the vehicle from the front.
- Keep tow rope clear of bumper.
- Ensure tow rope is securely fixed to towing eye, at both ends. Check by pulling on tow rope.
- Towing with a tow rope could cause severe automatic transaxle damage. When towing vehicle with automatic transaxle, use flat bed or wheel lift equipment.
- Drive off slowly and avoid jerky movements.

⚠ Warning

When towing with a tow rope, control of towed vehicle can be lost.

- Do not tow if the wheels, transaxle, axles, steering or brakes are damaged.
- Do not remove the key from the ignition switch as this will lock the steering and this will make the vehicle undriveable.

Caution

Do not use transport tie-down hook to tow your vehicle.

The vehicle could be damaged.

Rear Towing Eye Attachment

When towing another vehicle, use the rear towing eye attachment. It should be used only in an emergency situation. (for example, to pull the vehicle out of a ditch, a snow bank, or mud.)

To use the rear towing eye attachment, do the following:

1. Find the rear towing eye attachment below the floor cover in the luggage compartment.
2. Open the cover on the rear bumper and screw the towing eye attachment firmly in place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the rear towing eye attachment is used, always pull the cable or chain in a straight direction with respect to the eye. Do not apply force to the hook from any side direction. To prevent damage, do not take up slack in the cable too quickly.

Caution
Do not use transport tie-down hook to tow another vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged.

APPEARANCE CARE

EXTERIOR CARE

Washing The Vehicle

To preserve the vehicle's finish, wash it often and out of direct sunlight.

Caution
Do not use petroleum-based, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents as they can damage the vehicle's paint, metal, or plastic parts. If damage occurs, it would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your CHEVROLET retailer. Follow all manufacturer directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions, and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product. Avoid using high pressure washes closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8,274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after, to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

Finish Care

Application of aftermarket clearcoat sealant/wax materials is not recommended. If painted surfaces are damaged, see your CHEVROLET retailer to have the damage assessed and repaired. Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Occasional hand waxing or mild polishing should be done to remove residue from the paint finish. See your CHEVROLET retailer for approved cleaning products.

Do not apply waxes or polishes to uncoated plastic, vinyl, rubber, decals, simulated wood, or flat paint as damage can occur.

Caution
Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.

To keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Regularly clean bright metal parts with water or chrome polish on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

For aluminum, never use auto or chrome polish, steam, or caustic soap to clean. A coating of wax, rubbed to a high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses and Emblems

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth, and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under "Washing the Vehicle" earlier in this section.

Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean rubber blades using a lint-free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking.

Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged. Damage can be caused by extreme dusty conditions, sand, salt, heat, sun, snow, and ice.

Weatherstrips

Apply silicone grease on weatherstrips to make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

Tires

Use a stiff brush with tire cleaner to clean the tires.

Caution
Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wheels and Trim - Aluminum Or Chrome

Use a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water to clean the wheels. After rinsing thoroughly with clean water, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Caution

Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium, or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the chrome with soap and water after exposure.

Caution

To avoid surface damage, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. Use only approved cleaners. Also, never drive a vehicle with aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes. Damage could occur and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Steering, Suspension, and Chassis Components

Visually inspect the front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear. Inspect the power steering for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Visually check constant velocity joints, rubber boots, and axle seals for leaks.

Body Component Lubrication

Lubricate all key lock cylinders, hood hinges, tailgate hinges, and the steel fuel door hinge unless the components are plastic. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

Underbody Maintenance

Use plain water to flush dirt and debris from the vehicle's underbody. Your CHEVROLET retailer or an underbody car washing system can do this. If not removed, rust and corrosion can develop.

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Finish Damage

Quickly repair minor chips and scratches with touch-up materials available from your CHEVROLET retailer to avoid corrosion. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your CHEVROLET retailer's body and paint shop.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted vehicle surfaces causing blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface. See your CHEVROLET retailer for assistance and rectification.

INTERIOR CARE

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Immediately remove any soils. Note that newspapers or dark garments that can transfer color to home furnishings can also permanently transfer color to the vehicle's interior.

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Using a mild soap solution, immediately remove hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellant from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Your CHEVROLET retailer may have products for cleaning the interior. Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage. To prevent overspray, apply all cleaners directly to the cleaning cloth. Cleaners should be removed quickly. Never allow cleaners to remain on the surface being cleaned for extended periods of time.

Cleaners may contain solvents that can become concentrated in the interior. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the doors and windows.

To prevent damage, do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with excessive pressure.
- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. For liquid cleaners, use approximately 20 drops per 3.78 L (1 gal) of water. A concentrated soap solution will leave a residue that creates streaks and attracts dirt. Do not use solutions that contain strong or

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

caustic soap.

- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.

Interior Glass

To clean, use a terry cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. Commercial glass cleaners may be used, if necessary, after cleaning the interior glass with plain water.

Caution
To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window defogger.

Fabric/Carpet

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating brush attachment is being used during vacuuming, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soils, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean lint-free colorfast cloth with water or club soda. Microfiber cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil into the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any color transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by club soda or plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colorfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

Following the cleaning process, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture.

Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces

Use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a soft microfiber cloth dampened with a mild soap solution.

Caution

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam, spot lifters, or spot removers. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windshield under certain conditions.

Caution

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

FLOOR MATS

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals.

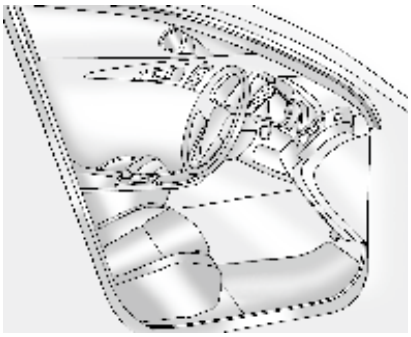
Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that GM certified floor mats be purchased. Non-GM floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.



Removing and Replacing the Floor Mats

1. Pull up on the rear of the floor mat and remove.
2. Reinstall by lining up the floor mat and snap into position.
3. Make sure the floor mat is properly secured and verify that it does not interfere with the pedals.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

General Information 10-1
Scheduled Maintenance 10-2
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 10-5

GENERAL INFORMATION

SERVICE INFORMATION

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

CONFIRMATIONS

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service Guide.

The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing CHEVROLET retailer.

Make sure that the Service Guide is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

SERVICE SCHEDULES

Maintenance services and record retention are the owner's responsibility. You should retain evidence that proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance services chart.
For vehicles with normal annual mileage.

MAINTENANCE INTERVAL / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Kilometers or time in months, whichever comes first													
	6 Months/7500	1 Year/15000	1.5 Years/22500	2 Years/30000	2.5 Years/37500	3 Years/45000	3.5 Years/52500	4 Years/60000	4.5 Years/67500	5 Years/75000	5.5 Years/82500	6 Years/90000	6.5 Years/97500	7 Years/105000
ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM														
Drive Belt (alternator, power steering and A/C compressor)		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Engine Oil and Engine Oil Filter (1) (3)	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Cooling System Hose and Connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Coolant (3)	I	I	I	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	I	I	I	R
Fuel Filter	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Fuel Line and Connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Cleaner Element (2)	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
PCV System	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Chart Symbols:
I- Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust, rotate or replace.
R- Replace or change
(1) If a vehicle is operated under severe conditions: short distance driving, extensive idling or driving in dusty conditions, change engine oil and the filter every 7,500 kms or 6 months, whichever comes first.
(2) Inspect the air cleaner element every 7,500 kms or 6 months if vehicle is driven under dusty driving conditions. If necessary correct, clean or replace.
(3) Refer to "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants".

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For vehicles with normal annual mileage.

MAINTENANCE ITEM \ MAINTENANCE INTERVAL	Kilometers or time in months, whichever comes first													
	6 Months/7500	1 Year/15000	1.5 Years/22500	2 Years/30000	2.5 Years/37500	3 Years/45000	3.5 Years/52500	4 Years/60000	4.5 Years/67500	5 Years/75000	5.5 Years/82500	6 Years/90000	6.5 Years/97500	7 Years/105000
CHASSIS AND BODY														
Exhaust Pipe & Mountings	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake / Clutch Fluid (3) (4)	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I	I
Front Brake Pads & Discs (5)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Rear Brake Pads & Discs (5)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Parking Brake	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake Line and Connections (Including Booster)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Manual Transaxle : Leak Check (3)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Transfer Case / Rear Differential : Leak Check (3)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Chassis and Underbody Bolts and Nuts Tight / Secure	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Chart Symbols:

I- Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust, rotate or replace.

R- Replace or change

(3) Refer to “Recommended Fluids and Lubricants”.

(4) Change the brake fluid every 15,000 kms or 1 year (whichever is earlier) if the vehicle is mainly driven under severe conditions:

- Driving in hilly or mountainous terrain, or
- Towing a trailer frequently.

(5) More frequent maintenance is required if under severe condition: short distance driving, extensive idling, frequent low-speed operation in stop-and go traffic or driving in dusty conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For vehicles with normal annual mileage.

MAINTENANCE ITEM \ MAINTENANCE INTERVAL	Kilometers or time in months, whichever comes first													
	6 Months/7500	1 Year/15000	1.5 Years/22500	2 Years/30000	2.5 Years/37500	3 Years/45000	3.5 Years/52500	4 Years/60000	4.5 Years/67500	5 Years/75000	5.5 Years/82500	6 Years/90000	6.5 Years/97500	7 Years/105000
CHASSIS AND BODY														
Automatic Transaxle Fluid (7)(3)	See remarks (7) under “Chart Symbols”													
Tire Condition and Inflation Pressure (8)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Wheel Alignment (6)	As and when required or as suggested by CHEVROLET retailer													
Wheel Balancing (6)	As and when required or as suggested by CHEVROLET retailer													
Steering Wheel & Linkage	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power Steering Fluid & Lines	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drive Shaft Boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Safety Belts, Buckles & Anchorages	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Lubricate Locks, Hinges & hood Latch	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L
A/C Filter (9)	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R

Chart Symbols:

I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust, rotate or replace.

R - Replace or change

L - Lubricate

(3) Refer to "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants".

(6) If necessary, rotate and balance wheels.

(7) Replace every 1,57,500 kms for normal driving condition (Inspection is not required. A fluid inspection is only required if there is a transmission failure or a fluid leak.)
Replace every 75,000 kms for severe driving condition as below
- For vehicles mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather, in hilly or mountainous terrain, when frequently towing a trailer, or used for taxi, police or delivery service.

(8) Tire condition should be inspected before driving and tire pressure should be checked each time you fill your fuel tank or at least every 14 days using a tire pressure gauge.

(9) More frequent maintenance is required if under dusty driving conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ADDITIONAL SERVICING

Extreme Operating Conditions

Extreme operating conditions are given when at least one of the following occurs frequently :

- Repeated short-distance driving less than 5 miles (10 km).
- Extensive idling and/or slow-speed driving in stop-and-go traffic.
- Driving on dusty roads.
- Driving on hilly or mountainous terrain.
- Towing a trailer.
- Driving in heavy city traffic where the outside temperatures regularly reach 90°F(32°C) or higher.
- Driving as a taxi, police or delivery vehicle.
- Frequent driving when outside temperature remains below freezing.

Police vehicles, taxis and driving school vehicles are also classified as operating under extreme conditions.

Under extreme operating conditions, it may be necessary to have certain scheduled service work done more frequently than the scheduled intervals.

Seek technical advice on the servicing requirements dependent on the specific operating conditions.

RECOMMENDED FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS

Only use products that have been tested and approved. Damage resulting from the use of non approved materials will not be covered by the warranty.

⚠ Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RECOMMENDED FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS

Item	Capacity	Service Interval	Classification
Engine oil (Including oil filter)	5.4L	Change every 15,000 kms or 1 year (whichever is earlier)	5W-30 ACEA A3/B4
Engine Coolant	9.1L	Change every 52,500 kms or 3.5 years (whichever is earlier)	Ethylene glycol based long life coolant
Manual Transaxle Fluid (FWD)	1.8L	Fluid change or inspection is not required unless there is a transmission failure or a fluid leak	BOT303 Mod
Automatic Transaxle Fluid (AWD)	8.77L	Replace every 1,57,500 kms for normal driving condition (Inspection is not required. A fluid inspection is only required if there is a transmission failure or a fluid leak. Replace every 75,000 kms for severe driving conditions as below - For vehicles mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather, in hilly or mountaneous terrain, when frequently towing a trailer, or used for taxi, police or delivery service	DEXRON VI
Brake Fluid	0.67L	Change every 30,000 kms or 2 years (whichever is earlier)	DOT4
Clutch Fluid	0.053L	Change every 30,000 kms or 2 years (whichever is earlier)	DOT4
Power Steering Fluid	1.1L	Inspect every 15,000 kms or 1 year (whichever is earlier) and replenish if necessary.	DEXRON VI
Transfer Case Fluid (AWD)	0.8L	Fluid change or inspection is not required unless there is a failure or a fluid leak.	Synthetic Hypoid 75W-90
Differential Carrier Assembly Fluid (AWD)	0.6L	Fluid change or inspection is not required unless there is a failure or a fluid leak.	Synthetic Hypoid 75W-90

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Oil

Engine Oil is identified by its Quality and its Viscosity Grade. “Quality” and “ “Specification” are equivalent terms in this respect. Engine Oil Quality is more important than Viscosity when selecting which Engine Oil to use. The Oil Quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas Viscosity Grade gives information on the oil’s thickness over a temperature range.

Engine Oil Quality for Service

Only use 5W-30 ACEA A3/B4 engine oil.

Topping up Engine Oil

The viscosity should be of the correct rating. Only use 5W-30 ACEA A3/B4 engine oil.

Use of Engine Oil with only ACEA A1/B1 or only ACEA A5/B5 Quality is prohibited, as it can cause long term engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Engine Oil Additives

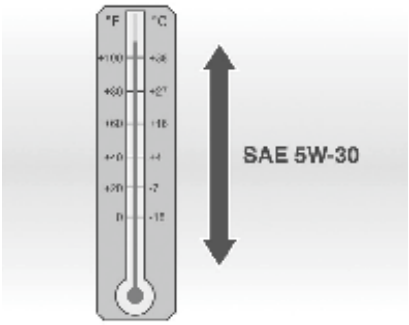
The use of supplemental Engine Oil Additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

Engine Oil Viscosity Grades

The SAE Viscosity Grade gives information of the thickness of the Oil.

Multigrade Oil is indicated by two figures:

The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature Viscosity and the second figure indicates the high temperature Viscosity.



SAE 5W-30 is the best Viscosity Grade for your vehicle. Do not use other Viscosity Grade Oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40 or 20W-50.

Cold Temperature Operation:

If operating your vehicle in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below -25°C, a Viscosity Grade SAE 0W-xx should be used. An Oil of this Viscosity Grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When selecting an Oil of the appropriate Viscosity Grade be sure to always select an Oil that meets the dexos™, Specification.

- Down to -25°C: 5W-30, 5W-40.
- Down to -25 °C and below: 0W-30, 0W-40.

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil.

Multi grade oil is indicated by two figures.

The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Coolant and Antifreeze

Use only organic acid type-long life coolant (LLC) antifreeze.

In countries with moderate climate the coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -35°C.

In countries with cold climate the coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -50°C. This concentration should be maintained all year-round.

Maintain a sufficient concentration of anti-freeze.

Coolant additives intended to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of coolant additives will be rejected.

Brake/Clutch Fluid

Only use authorised brake/clutch fluid (DOT 4) for this vehicle.

Power Steering Fluid

Only use Dexron VI fluid.

Manual Transmission Fluid

Only use Castrol BOT 303 Mod fluid.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

Only use Dexron VI fluid.

Transfer Case Fluid (AWD)

Only use synthetic hypoid 75W-90 fluid.

Differential Carrier Assembly Fluid (AWD)

Only use synthetic hypoid 75W-90 fluid.

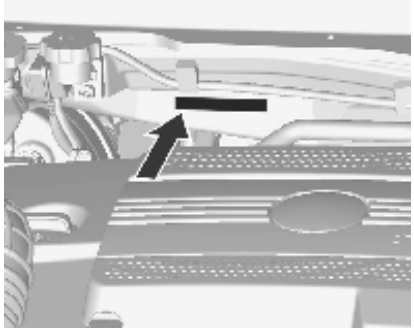
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TECHNICAL DATA

Vehicle Identification 11-1
Vehicle Specifications 11-3

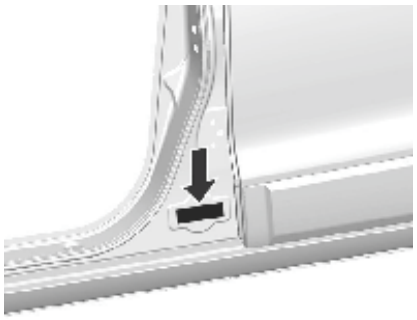
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)



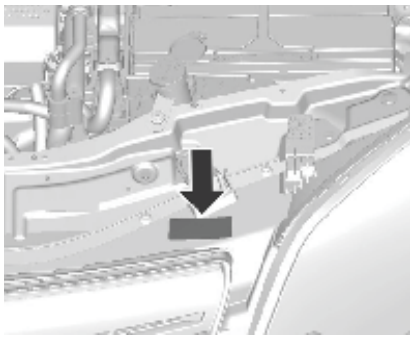
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is engraved at the centre of the fire wall.

IDENTIFICATION PLATE / LABEL



The identification plate / label is on the passenger's door frame.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



In some models, the plate / label is located in the engine compartment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS

ENGINE

Engine		
Sales designation		Z22D1
Engine identifier code		LNQ
Type		4-Cylinder/in-line 4 Stroke diesel direct injection
Valvetrain		DOHC 16 valves
Displacement (cc)		2231
Bore x stroke (mm)		86 x 96
Compression ratio		16.3:1
Max. Power (kW@rpm)		137.2@3800
Max. Torque (Nm@rpm)		424@2000
Fuel system		Common rail injection
Battery	Rating (V-Ah)	12-90
	Cold cranking (CCA)	810

DRIVETRAIN

6-Speed Manual Transaxle		
Drive system		Front wheel drive
Gear ratios	1st	4.167
	2nd	2.130
	3rd	1.321
	4th	0.954
	5th	0.755
	6th	0.623
	Reverse	3.917
	Final drive ratio	3.895

6-Speed Automatic Transaxle		
Drive system		All wheel drive
Gear ratios	1st	4.584
	2nd	2.964
	3rd	1.912
	4th	1.446
	5th	1.000
	6th	0.746
	Reverse	2.940
	Final drive ratio	2.940

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BRAKE SYSTEM

Brake System	
Type	Hydraulic vacuum assisted diagonal dual circuit with auto slack adjuster
Front wheel	Ventilated disc
Rear wheel	Ventilated disc

CAPACITIES

Capacities	
Fuel tank (L)	65.0
Engine oil (L) (Including oil filter)	5.4
Coolant (L)	9.1

DIMENSIONS

Exterior Dimensions		
Overall length (mm)		4,673
Overall width (mm)		1,870
Overall height (mm)		1,755
Wheel base (mm)	MT	2,702
	AT	2,705
Track (mm)	Front	1,567
	Rear	1,576
Min ground clearance (mm)	MT	177
	AT	176

WHEEL AND TYRE

Wheel and Tyre				
Tyre size	Wheel dimension	Type make	Tyre Pressure (kPa) [psi]	
			Front	Rear
235/65/R17 104H	7J x 17	Hankook	240 [35]	240 [35]
215/70 R16 100T*	6.5J x 16	Hankook		

* Spare steel wheel only

WEIGHT

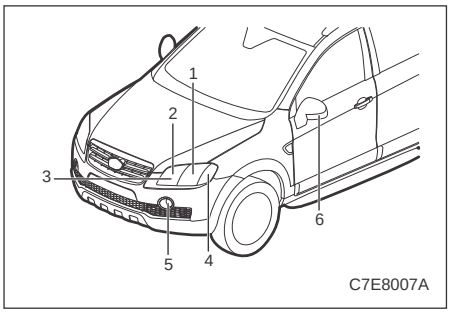
Weight		
Kerb weight (kg)	MT	1803
	AT	1903
Maximum Gross vehicle weight (kg)	MT	2505
	AT	2538

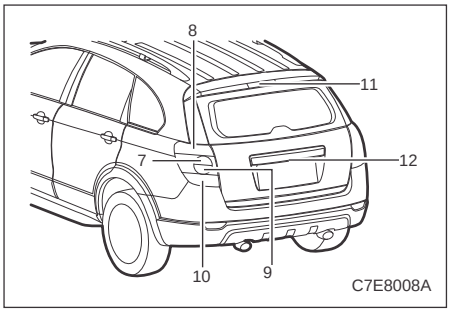
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BULB SPECIFICATIONS

Bulbs			Wattages x Quantity	Remarks
Front	1	Headlamp low beam	55W x 2	Halogen bulb
	2	Headlamp high beam	55W x 2	Halogen bulb
	3	Parking lamps	5W x 2	
	4	Turn signal lamps	21W x 2	
	5	Fog lamps*	24W x 2	Halogen bulb
	6	Outside mirror turn signal lamps*	LED type 5 x 2	
Rear	7	Turn signal lamps	21W x 2	
	8	Brake / Tail lamps	21/5W x 2	
	9	Backup lamps	16W x 2	
	10	Fog lamps*	21W x 2	
	11	Center high mounted stop lamps	5W x 5	
	12	License plate lamps	5W x 2	
Interior		Dome lamps	10W x 2	
		Front reading lamps	10W x 2	
		Front door step lamps	5W x 2	
		Glove box lamp	5W x 1	

* Bulb specification in some model can be different from the above table. See the wattage printed on the bulb before replacing burnt bulbs.





⚠ WARNING

The same rating of the bulb to be used during replacement and any usage of higher wattage bulbs can cause thermal issues such as melting of lamp housing and its surrounding parts. Warranty would be void if higher wattage bulbs are being used.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE AND WARRANTY

Standard limited warranty coverage 12-2
Predelivery inspection and vehicle delivery 12-9
Owner's statement of acceptance 12-11
Chevrolet service 12-13
Maintenance record sheet 12-19
Battery 12-21
Separate corrosion protection service 12-22
Body inspection record 12-23
Emission warranty 12-25

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STANDARD LIMITED WARRANTY COVERAGE

1. SCOPE

General Motors India Private Limited, a private limited company incorporated under the companies Act 1956 and having its Works/Registered office at Chandrapura Industrial Estate, Halol, District Panchmahals, Gujarat 389351 (“General Motors India”) warrants that your new Chevrolet Captiva ("vehicle") is free from defect in material or workmanship, subject to your compliance with the following terms and conditions mentioned hereunder and other vehicle maintenance norms as mentioned elsewhere in this service booklet.

Only an authorized CHEVROLET retailer as mentioned in this booklet will make the necessary repairs, using new, re-conditioned or re-manufactured parts with a view to correcting any defect covered by this warranty.

2. WHAT IS COVERED

Time and distance limits for New Vehicle Warranty Coverage.

Warranty Type	Warranty Limits	Other Warranties
A : General	Three (3) years or 1,00,000 kms (whichever is earlier) from the date of delivery by a CHEVROLET retailer or the date of first registration of the motor vehicle, whichever occurs first.	These parts are covered by other warranties : 1. Battery (one (1) year) (covered by the battery manufacturer**) 2. Tyres (one (1) year) (covered by the tyre manufacturer**) 3. Audio/Radio/Acc. (one (1) year) (covered by the Audio/Radio/Acc. manufacturer**) See clause 5.
B : Rust Through*	Three (3) years or 1,00,000 kms (whichever is earlier) from the date of delivery of the motor vehicle or from the date of first registration of the motor vehicle, whichever occurs first.	The warranty covers exterior body metal except : 1. Items not covered by warranty listed in clause 3 2. Exhaust pipe and fuel system rust

* A hole through a body panel caused by rust / corrosion from inside to outside.

** Service / warranty shall be provided by the concerned equipment manufacturer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- The obligation under this New Vehicle Warranty is limited to the repair of the new motor vehicle at no charge by the Chevrolet authorized retailer. For parts replaced during such repair the same warranty applies until the end of the New Vehicle Warranty period as stipulated herein. All warranty claims expire at the end of the warranty period as specified under Clause 2.
- Liability of ***General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.*** under this New Vehicle Warranty is limited to the value of the service, repairs/ replacement of parts found to be defective within the warranty period. Beyond servicing and/or repairing defective parts in the vehicle, ***General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.*** does not undertake to replace the vehicle / or reimburse the purchaser by payment of any money in respect of the vehicle purchased by them.
- Under the terms of New Vehicle Warranty, installation, free service will be provided only within the municipal limits of the cities/towns where ***General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.*** has its service network, ***as elaborated elsewhere in this Owner's Manual.*** This list of retailers is subject to change/modification without prior notice. Service outside the municipal limits specified above will be provided after charging the actual to and from traveling and incidental expenses, as prevailing from time to time.
- Necessary care and caution is taken in manufacturing of the vehicle, however, ***General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.*** shall not be liable for any loss or damage caused to any article, property, death or disability caused to any human life arising out of fire, electric fault, short circuit, accidental handling or negligent use of the vehicle. The maximum liability in monetary terms shall be restricted to the value of the defective parts and / or value of services rendered only. Furthermore, the New Vehicle Warranty, in no case, shall extend to the payment of any monetary consideration whatsoever, of the replacement or return of the vehicle as a whole.
- The decision of ***General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.*** will be final and binding on all matters arising out of this New Vehicle Warranty.
- The owner should preserve the original Invoice for necessary verification and produce the same, as and when required.
- The optimum performance of the vehicle is under standard test conditions.

This New Vehicle Warranty is issued at Halol, District Panchmahals, Gujarat and competent courts shall have exclusive jurisdiction over matters by or following from time to time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. WARRANTY LIMITATIONS

The warranty will cease to exist in following conditions:

a. Failure to have the required periodic inspection and required service performed as per the Periodic Maintenance Schedule.

b. Improper or wrong maintenance and in deviation with guidelines mentioned in this service booklet.

c. Any modification, alterations made to the vehicle such as including but not restricted to adding lights, changing engine specifications to increase horsepower, or using wide tyres, and or any other modification in the vehicle that may likely to have an effect on the performance of the vehicle. (e.g. defects caused by the installation of non homologated wheels and tyres are not covered by the warranty.)

d. Failure to use genuine parts / fluids (oil, coolant, brake fluid) and / or other accessories / consumables recommended or approved by General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.

e. Use of the vehicle for purposes or in a manner other than the one mentioned in the Owner's Manual. Exceeding specified capacities such as loading weight, passenger, speed, use as a commercial vehicle and rpm limitations.

f. Damage caused by driving the vehicle under severe conditions such as un-pliable or water-logged roads, in races or rallies.

g. Damage caused by natural disasters including but not restricted to earthquakes, storms, floods, fire and accidents. The owners are recommended to keep their vehicle insurance valid at all times.

h. Damage caused by smoke, chemicals, bird-droppings, salt, stone chipping, scratches, iron dust or any other extraneous circumstances like external mechanical or chemical influences (regarding paint or body damage, specially stone throw, air-borne rust, industrial fall out), damage to catalytic converter due to use of wrong/bad quality fuel acting on the vehicle.

i. Damage caused by normal wear (for instance brake-pad, etc.) or exposure to the elements such as discoloring or deformation of any interior, plastic, chrome or painted part or surface.

j. Sensory complaint by the owner against symptoms such as noise, vibration or oil stains which do not effect performance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

k. Damage which should have been detected during normal usage but became serious when left unattended to and/or the owner of the vehicle having failed to claim and having rectified a defect which was already apparent during vehicle delivery, immediately after delivery or a defect which becomes apparent at a later date immediately after it became apparent.

l. Failure of the owner to adhere to the requirements outlined in Clause 4.

m. Fuel system damage caused by water or other foreign matter in the fuel system.

n. Damage caused by the installation of non genuine accessories or equipment after the vehicle has been purchased from the CHEVROLET retailer such as radio, car telephone, CD radio set, or cargo carrier and / or other activities of a similar nature.

o. Damage caused by running vehicle on adulterated fuel/lubricants or fuel/lubricants other than those specified by General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.

p. Damage caused by usage of any non-recommended Oil additive / Engine flushing agent.

Note : General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. doesn't recommend any Oil additive / Engine flushing agent for its vehicles.

WHAT IS NOT COVERED

- Adjustments, cleaning, inspection, or required periodic maintenance.
- Parts designated as requiring periodic replacement.
- Warranty repair not performed by a CHEVROLET retailer.
- Charges or fees for telephone, tow, transportation charges of the vehicle to the nearest CHEVROLET retailer, rental car, and so forth; compensation for inconvenience or commercial losses; all other consequential costs relating to the owner being unable to use the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Any accident, damage, loss or destruction due to negligent, careless use of vehicle.
- Damage to the engine while driving in water logged conditions or entry of water in to the engine.
- Consumptive parts and oil/grease and other fluids. (See the following tables of consumptive parts and oil/grease and other fluids.)

Consumptive Parts	Oil/Grease and other fluids:
Drive Belts	Engine oil
Air cleaner element	Transmission fluid
Fuel filter	Differential carrier assembly fluid
Oil filter	Transfer case fluid
Clutch disc, clutch parts	Power steering fluid
Brush holders	Brake fluid
Brake shoe and pads	Coolant
Brake discs	Grease
Brake drums	Washer fluid
Wiper blades	Battery fluid
Light bulbs	Diesel
Motor brushes	Air conditioner refrigerant
Hoses	Other lubricants, etc.
Fuses, etc.	

No warranty repair shall be made if it is found that the vehicle Identification number like chassis / engine number, odometer or the warranty & service booklet (Owner's Manual), have been tampered with. This list is neither exclusive nor exhaustive and the decision of General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. shall be final and binding.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. WHAT THE OWNER MUST DO

In order to keep this warranty valid you must:

a. Use your vehicle as instructed in the Owner's Manual.

b. Have your vehicle inspected according to this schedule.

The cost of the service is borne by the owner. If the services are not performed within the specified time limits, the general and the rust through warranty as referred to under Clause 2 above, shall be rendered null and void and shall not be reinstated by a subsequent service.

c. Keep the warranty & service booklet (Owner's Manual) and all receipts in a safe place to present to the CHEVROLET retailer at regular maintenance visits and when repair work is required.

5. PARTS COVERED BY OTHER WARRANTY CONDITION

a. Battery : The coverage period is 1 year from the date of new vehicle registration regardless of the distance traveled.

b. Tyres : This warranty is covered by the tyre manufacturer. The coverage period is one year. Please check with your CHEVROLET retailer for details.

c. Audio/Radio/Acc. : This warranty is covered by the audio/radio/Acc. manufacturer. The coverage period is one year. Please check with your CHEVROLET retailer for details.

6. MAKING THE WARRANTY EFFECTIVE

The warranty goes into effect after CHEVROLET authorized retailer fills in the appropriate information about your vehicle and places the retailer's official seal and signature in the warranty & service booklet (Owner's manual).

7. REQUIREMENTS FOR WARRANTY WORK

To have warranty work carried out, present the warranty & service booklet (Owner's Manual) to the CHEVROLET retailer as mentioned in this booklet. If the warranty & service booklet is lost or incomplete, then work to be carried out with respect to the standard warranty shall be refused.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8. CHANGE OF OWNERSHIP

If the vehicle is sold during the warranty period, please deliver the warranty & service booklet (Owner's Manual) to the new owner. The new owner will need to complete the change of address or subsequent ownership notification card located elsewhere in this booklet in order for the coverage to be transferred.

9. EXPENSES ASSOCIATED WITH WARRANTY WORK

The expenses of repair work and parts of your CHEVROLET vehicle will be covered by CHEVROLET standard limited warranty in accordance with the WARRANTY & SERVICE BOOKLET (OWNER'S MANUAL). Other expenses that are not covered by the CHEVROLET Standard Limited Warranty must be covered by the owner.

10. General Motors India Private Limited is launching the CHEVROLET Captiva in different cities in a phased manner. The CHEVROLET retailer responsible for delivering your Captiva is qualified to provide all Captiva related services within the city where he is located. As other CHEVROLET retailers become operational to handle the Captiva, they will also be able to provide similar Captiva related services. IN ORDER FOR THE WARRANTY ON YOUR VEHICLE TO APPLY, IT IS IMPERATIVE THAT YOUR CAPTIVA BE SERVICED, HANDLED AND ATTENDED TO ONLY BY CHEVROLET RETAILER AS SET FORTH IN THIS BOOKLET.

11. The following requisite document should be presented to the CHEVROLET retailer at the time of making a claim under New Vehicle Warranty:

- Original invoice issued by CHEVROLET retailer.
- Warranty and service booklet / maintenance record.
- Any other document deemed to be necessary by CHEVROLET retailer and/or General Motors India Pvt. Ltd..

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PREDELIVERY INSPECTION AND VEHICLE DELIVERY

Before delivering the vehicle we carried out a thorough predelivery inspection in order to ensure that your Chevrolet vehicle is in a fault-free condition. Accompanying this appropriately filled out service booklet (Owner's Manual) are the tool kit and your vehicle documents.

You have been informed of the service intervals and necessary service checks, including under extreme operating conditions and in particular with regard to oil changing of diesel engines.

City, date :

CHEVROLET Retailer's / ASO's Stamp and Signature

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OWNER'S
STATEMENT OF ACCEPTANCE

I hereby certify that the vehicle has been delivered in an orderly and proper operating condition, including Keys, **Service booklet (Owner's Manual) and tool kit. I have read and understood the terms and conditions pertaining to the New Vehicle Warranty and agree to abide by the same.**

I have been informed of the service intervals and necessary service checks, including under extreme operating conditions.

Date of delivery :

City, date :

Name and signature of customer :

This sheet must be detached prior to vehicle delivery and placed with the vehicle file **after it has been signed** by the customer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHEVROLET

Dear Customer,

We are confident that you and your family would be enjoying the safe and comfortable drive of the Chevrolet Captiva.

We would like to undertake a thorough check-up of the vehicle at 1000 kms or 30 days, whichever occurs earlier. This will also allow us to re-emphasize the salient features of the Captiva to you.

In the unlikely event of an emergency assistance, please call your nearest CHEVROLET retailer as mentioned in this booklet or please feel free to call our 24 hr. helpline at 30308080.

1000 kms / 30 days reassurance check-up (whichever is earlier)

VIN no. _____

PDI no. _____

Date of service_____

Date of delivery_____

Retailer code _____

Customer's name_____

Customer's tel. no. _____

I confirm that the vehicle has been inspected and delivered to my satisfaction.

Retailer's Signature

Customer's Signature

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1000 kms Reassurance check-up	
General Status review	Parking brake lamp/indicator
Check closing efforts of doors, keyless entry system & other functions	High beam/Turn signal Hazard indicator & all other telltale lamp
Under hood	Cigarette lighter/rear defogger
Visually check routing, leaks & damage	Check lighting system
— Check fluid levels	Horn/Radio/Outside Mirrors
— Engine oil level	High/Low beam/Hazard signal
— Brake/clutch oil level	Turn signal/Flash to pass signal
— Coolant level	Front/Rear fog lamps/Tail lamps
— Power steering oil	Stop lamp/Reversing lamp/Trunk lamp
— M/T / A/T oil	**Dynamic Evaluation**
Windscreen washer level & add washer fluid	Steering function/noise/abnormal drag
Underbody, wheels	Clutch & gear shifting function/ noise
Visually check routing, leaks & damage	Accelerating & braking function/ noise
Check tyre pressure	Check tyres
Electrical Checks	Any other abnormal noise
Malfunction indicator lamp	
Engine check lamp	
Charging lamp	
Oil pressure lamp	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHEVROLET Inspection

2nd Service Check 1 year / 15000 kms whichever occurs earlier

VIN _____

Regn. No._____

Delivery date _____

Date of service _____

Kms _____

I confirm that the job has been attended to my satisfaction.

Customer's Signature

Labour free & Parts are chargeable
(Retain with job card)

CHEVROLET Inspection

1st Service Check 6 months / 7500 kms whichever occurs earlier

VIN _____

Regn. No._____

Delivery date _____

Date of service _____

Kms _____

I confirm that the job has been attended to my satisfaction.

Customer's Signature

Labour free & Parts are chargeable
(Retain with job card)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Delivering Retailer's stamp & date

I hereby certify that the work has been carried out as per the schedule.

Servicing Retailer's / ASO stamp & date

Delivering Retailer's stamp & date

I hereby certify that the work has been carried out as per the schedule.

Servicing Retailer's / ASO stamp & date

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHEVROLET Inspection

4th Service Check 2 years / 30000 kms whichever occurs earlier

VIN _____

Regn. No._____

Delivery date _____

Date of service _____

Kms _____

I confirm that the job has been attended to my satisfaction.

Customer's Signature

Labour & Parts are chargeable
(Retain with job card)

CHEVROLET Inspection

3rd Service Check 1.5 years/22500 kms whichever occurs earlier

VIN _____

Regn. No._____

Delivery date _____

Date of service _____

Kms _____

I confirm that the job has been attended to my satisfaction.

Customer's Signature

Labour & Parts are chargeable
(Retain with job card)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Delivering Retailer's stamp & date

I hereby certify that the work has been carried out as per the schedule.

Servicing Retailer's / ASO stamp & date

Delivering Retailer's stamp & date

I hereby certify that the work has been carried out as per the schedule.

Servicing Retailer's / ASO stamp & date

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MAINTENANCE RECORD SHEET

(Repair category - Free Service/Paid Service/Running Repair/Accident Repair)

Repair Date	R.O. No.	Kms.	Repair Category	Details of Repair Done	Name of Servicing Retailer	Retailer's Stamp & Signature

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MAINTENANCE RECORD SHEET

(Repair category - Free Service/Paid Service/Running Repair/Accident Repair)

Repair Date	R.O. No.	Kms.	Repair Category	Details of Repair Done	Name of Servicing Retailer	Retailer's Stamp & Signature

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BATTERY

Battery type : _____

Battery make : _____

Battery number : _____

Important Instructions

- The battery must be fitted firmly in the cradle.
- Connecting cables and connectors must be fastened securely on to the battery.
- Connections must be made in the right polarity.
- Terminals must be kept coated with petroleum jelly/vaseline. DO NOT USE GREASE.
- Battery top & vent plugs must always be kept clean & dry .
- Electrolyte level must always be maintained in line with the bottom of the vent hole. In case of any drop in electrolyte level, add pure distilled water. NEVER ADD ACID.
- Battery is warranted for a period of one year only.
- Liability under this warranty is limited to defects arising out of faulty material or workmanship developing under proper use and NOT when the battery is merely discharged.
- Defects arising out of faulty vehicle electrical systems, negligent maintenance, incorrect charging or improper filling of the battery by unauthorised dealers/auto electricians are not covered by warranty.
- Consequent liabilities are not covered by this warranty policy.

CHEVROLET retailer's
Stamp

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEPARATE CORROSION PROTECTION SERVICE

Body/ Underbody Corrosion Protection Service

General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. provides a three (3) years or 1,00,000 kms (whichever is earlier) warranty vehicle that no rust-through of the body/underbody will occur, provided that the directives from General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. concerning the treatment, maintenance, and care of the vehicle (Owner's Manual) and especially the inspection and checks prescribed in the service booklet have been carried out.

Furthermore, the body paintwork and the corrosion protection must be visually inspected for damage as part of the regular annual inspection or 15,000 kms service. The customer is informed of any damage detected and measures to rectify this damage. Any damage discovered is also indicated in the following corrosion protection diagram.

Confirmation of the inspection is indicated by a stamp and dated signature, accompanied by indication of the vehicle mileage on the following verification documents.

Make use of this possibility in order to avoid problems during warranty claims regarding rust- through of the body / underbody.

The rust through warranty is not applicable if areas damaged by any reason remain unattended and become the cause of corrosion.

All repairs when required should be carried out promptly and by the CHEVROLET retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

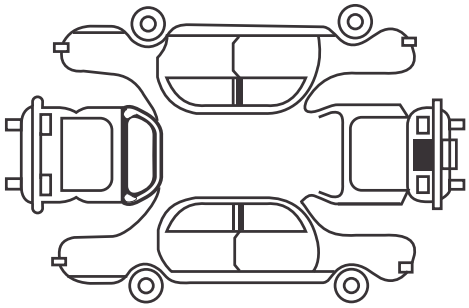
BODY INSPECTION RECORD

Vehicle identification number _____

Registration number _____

Name / address of owner _____

_____



Use the following symbols to indicate damage.

● Chipping ✕ Dent / Bumpy

▲ Scratch ■ Other damage

↑ Antirust re-treatment necessary

In order to maintain the General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. rust-through warranty, the vehicle must be subjected to an inspection by CHEVROLET retailer once a year. Any resulting work is subject to a charge.

Check-up 1 year after initial registration.

Check-up date _____

Odometer reading _____

Damage found

1. Outer body	Yes ☐	No ☐
2. Under body	Yes ☐	No ☐
3.Engine compartment	Yes ☐	No ☐

Retailer stamp / signature _____

Damage repaired Yes ☐ No ☐

Remarks : _____

_____

_____

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

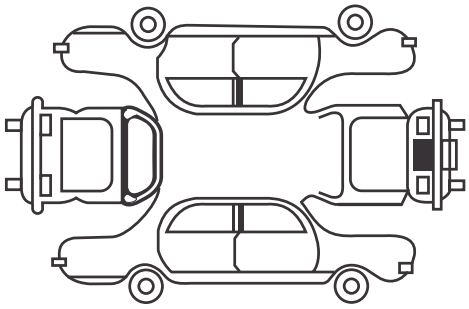
BODY INSPECTION RECORD

Vehicle identification number _____

Registration number _____

Name / address of owner _____

_____



Use the following symbols to indicate damage.

● Chipping ✕ Dent / Bumpy

▲ Scratch ■ Other damage

↑ Antirust re-treatment necessary

In order to maintain the General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. rust-through warranty, the vehicle must be subjected to an inspection by CHEVROLET retailer once a year. Any resulting work is subject to a charge.

Check-up 2 year after initial registration.

Check-up date _____

Odometer reading _____

Damage found

1. Outer body	Yes ☐	No ☐
2. Under body	Yes ☐	No ☐
3.Engine compartment	Yes ☐	No ☐

Retailer stamp / signature _____

Damage repaired Yes ☐ No ☐

Remarks : _____

_____

_____

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EMISSION WARRANTY

(Applicable in NCR Delhi, Chennai, Kolkata and Mumbai)

Subject to other terms of the warranty policy and the conditions and obligations laid down hereunder, General Motors India Pvt. Ltd., hereafter called General Motors India Pvt. Ltd., certifies that the components liable to affect the emission of the gaseous pollutants in the vehicle in the normal use despite the use to which it may be subjected, comply with the provisions of Rule 115 (2) of the Central Motor Vehicle Rules, 1989, and further warrants that if on examination by a service center duly authorized by the General Motors India Pvt. Ltd., the vehicle is discovered to be failing to meet the emission standard as specified in the said rule, our authorized service center shall take such corrective measures as may be necessary and shall at its sole discretion either repair or replace free of charge such components of emission control system as are specified in Annexure II hereof.

The definitions of various terms used in Emission warranty proposal are given in Annexure –I. These definitions shall be in line with the definition of the existing product Warranty definition.

Conditions :

1. This warranty will be in addition to and will run concurrently and parallel to the product warranty and will apply only in respect to components as mentioned in Annexure-II.
2. The period of the vehicle's warranty shall commence from the date of the vehicle sale.

2.1 Warranty period **- 1,00,000 kms or 3 years** whichever occurs earlier, from date of the vehicle sale.

3 The warranty claim will be accepted only after examination carried out by CHEVROLET retailers leading to a firm conclusion that none of the original settings/specifications have been tampered with and that the components (s) as mentioned in Annexure –II has/have a manufacturing defect, and /or, that the vehicle is unable to meet the In-use emission standards.

4. The methods of examination to determine the warrantable condition of the components will be at sole discretion of General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. and or its retailers and results of such examination will be final and binding. If, on examination, the warrantable condition is not established, General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. will have the right to charge full, or part, of the cost of such examination and resulting repairs / rectification.
5. In case of acceptance of the warranty under Emission Warranty, General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. will replace, at retailers, free of charge, the components which are covered as mentioned in Annexure-II, but the consumables as mentioned in OM shall be charged as per actual applicable rates.
6. In case of a vehicle in which the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

components covered under Emission Warranty or the associated parts, are not independently replaceable, on account of their being integral parts of a complete assembly, General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. will have the sole discretion to replace either the entire assembly or by using some of the parts of the system through suitable repairs or modifications.

7. Any consequential repairs or replacement of parts which may be found necessary to establish compliance to In-use emission standards, in addition to the replacement of the components covered under Emission Warranty, will not be made free of cost unless such parts are also found to be in a warrantable condition within the scope and limit of the product Warranty **(Chevrolet Captiva 3years /1,00,000 kms, whichever is earlier on vehicle)**. The consumables and labour shall be charged per actual during such repairs or replacement of parts.
8. All the parts removed for replacement under warranty will be the property of General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.
9. General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. will not be responsible for the cost of transportation of the vehicle to the nearest retailer or any loss due to non-availability of the vehicle during the period of a warranty claim and examination by CHEVROLET retailers.
10. General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. will not be responsible for any fines, penalties that may be charged by Statutory or Regulatory authorities on account of failure of the vehicle to comply with the in-use emission standards on the vehicle not meeting any such given legal/ regulatory requirement, during inspection by such authorities.
11. Emission Warranty will be applicable irrespective of the change of ownership of the vehicle provided all the conditions as laid down in this document are met from the date of original sale of the vehicle.

This Emission Warranty will be applicable only if the customer :

(i) Observes all the important instructions and any other precautions listed in the OM for use of the vehicle.

(ii) Under all circumstances uses lubricants and fuel as recommended by General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.

(iii) Regularly obtains and carries out maintenance at CHEVROLET retailers as per the list in this booklet only, in accordance with General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. guidelines and enters the details in the Service Booklet.

(iv) Immediately approaches the nearest CHEVROLET retailers as per the list in this booklet upon discovery of failure to comply with the In-use emission standard inspite of having

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

maintained and used the vehicle in accordance with the instructions in the OM and having carried out such repairs and adjustments as may be required with a view to establish such compliance.

(v) Produces the 'Pollution Under Control (PUC)' certificate valid for the period immediately preceding the test during which the failure is discovered, the test having been carried out either for obtaining a new certificate, or pursuant upon being directed by an officer as referred to in sub – rule (2) of Rule 116 of the Central Motor Vehicles Rules.

(vi)Produces the service booklet (Owner's Manual) and all relevant bills for verification of details.

(vii)Produces receipts covering maintenance of the vehicle as specified in the OM from the date of original purchase of the vehicle.

(viii)Produces valid certificate of insurance & RTO registration.

Conditions under which warranty is NOT applicable:

1. Non production/availability of a valid 'Pollution under Control' certificates as described in customer obligation (V).
2. In case the vehicle is not serviced by CHEVROLET retailers as per the list in this booklet as per the service schedule described in the maintenance chart given in the Owner's Manual.
3. A vehicle, which has been subjected to abnormal use, abuses, neglect and improper maintenance or has met with an accident.
4. Use of such replacement parts, which are not specified and approved by General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.
5. If the vehicle or parts thereof, have been altered, tampered with or modified or replaced in an unauthorized manner.
6. A vehicle on which the odometer is not functioning or the odometer has been changed or the reading of which has been changed / tampered with so that the actual mileage cannot be readily determined.
7. A vehicle, which has been used, for competitions, races, rallies or for the purpose of establishing records.
8. Examination by CHEVROLET retailers as per the list in this booklet of the vehicle shows that any of the conditions stipulated in the OM with regard to use and maintenance have been violated.
9. A vehicle, which has been run on adulterated fuel or lubricant or fuels lubricants other than those, specified by GMI.

Scope and Limits:

1. This emission warranty is in addition to the product warranty for the vehicle as per the scope and limit described in the OM and all conditions described therein will

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

apply, in addition to those exclusively stipulated in this warranty.

2. The emission warranty covers only compliance with the emission standard as specified in sub rule (2) of Rule 115 of CMVR. It does not cover any other performance of these parts or routine test and consequent maintenance or adjustments to establish compliance to the in-use emission standard as applicable to the state, in which the vehicle is registered and is in use.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ANNEXURE-I

Definitions:

1. **Vehicle** : The Motor Vehicle approved for sale within India under the provisions of Central Motor Vehicle Rules, 1989 or any subsequent amendment or substitution thereof.
2. **Owner's Manual (OM)** : A document given to the customer at the time of sale of the vehicle giving guidelines on use and maintenance of the vehicle including the terms and conditions of Warranty
3. **Maintenance** : Maintenance as per the schedule provided in the Owner's Manual by General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. including inspection, verification check, adjustment and replacement, if necessary.
4. **Service Booklet** : The scheduled service record book in Owner's Manual, which is required to be filled by CHEVROLET retailer at the time of service.
5. **Abnormal Use** : The situations when the vehicle is put to use other than that intended by General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. such as racing, overloading or use of adulterated fuel or fuel not recommended by General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.
6. **Manufacturing Defect** : Means deficiency or deviation from normal production tolerance in design, material, or workmanship in a device or system which affects any parameter, performance, or component belonging to emission control system.
7. **Product Warranty** : The manufacturer warranty as provided by General Motors India Pvt. Ltd., which covers failure of various parts and systems as per the Owner's Manual. 3 years/1,00,000 kms, whichever is earlier on vehicle.
8. **Emission Warranty** : Warranty for emission performance of the vehicle as determined by sub-rule (2) of rule no 115 of the Central Motor Vehicles Rules, 1989.
9. **Authorized Service Centers** : Any service facilities authorised by General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. to perform warranty repairs. This shall include all of CHEVROLET retailers that are recognised for service of subject vehicles or any other service center duly authorised by General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.
10. **Warrantable Condition** : Warrantable condition means any condition of a vehicle, which triggers the responsibility of General Motors India Pvt. Ltd. to take corrective action within the framework of emission Warranty. This however shall not include any statutory or regulatory fines or penalties.
11. **Warranted Parts** : Those components, listed as per Annexure–II.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ANNEXURE-II

List of Components Covered under Emission Warranty

S. No.	Part name
1	Catalytic Converter***
2	Exhaust Manifold Gasket
3	Electronic Control Module
4	Mass Air Flow Sensor
5	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor
6	Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor
7	Air Temp. Sensor
8	Exhaust Temperature Sensor
9	Coolant Temperature Sensor
10	Injectors
11	Fuel Pressure Regulator Valve
12	Exhaust Gas Re-circulation Valve
13	Fuel Pump
14	High Pressure Pump

*** Catalytic Converter is covered only for emission related failures as provided under the warranty statement. Replacements if any shall not be applicable for breakage and noise problems.

Note : All the above mentioned parts are covered only if the car fails to meet the prescribed Emission norms. Any other performance problems shall be treated as not relevant to the Emission warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHEVROLET

General Motors India Pvt. Ltd.

All information, illustrations and specifications contained in this Owner's Manual are based on the latest production information available at the time of publication. The right is reserved to make changes at any time without notice.

Regd. Office : Chandrapura Industrial Estate, Halol - 389 351.
Dist. Panchmahals, Gujarat, India. Phone : 91 2676 221000
Customer Assistance Center : Plot No. 15, Echelon Institutional Area,
Sector 32, Gurgaon - 122 001, Haryana, India. Tel. : 91 124 3080000
Works : A-16, MIDC Talegaon Industrial Area (Phase-II),
Near Floriculture Park, Talegaon Navlakh Umbhre Village Road, Tehsil-Maval,
Pune - 410 507, Maharashtra, India. Tel: 91 2114 663939

24 Hr. Helpline at 30308080

Part No.:J29600117
Revision No. 00
Revision Date
06/2012/1000

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine